

UNIT 6

The School Concert

حفل المدرسة الموسيقي



Main Book
OR
Time Saving
اختر طريقة شريك
مشاركتك بين كتاب الشرح
أو الكراسة التفاعلية
صفحة 3

Aims of the Unit : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

Listening/Speaking

- help a friend clean up
- مساعدة صديق في التنظيف
- describe how actions were performed in the past
- وصف أحداث حدثت في الماضي
- identify speakers in a conversation
- التعرف على المتحدثين في المحادثة

Reading

- read a concert review in a newspaper
- قراءة مقال نقدي عن حفل موسيقي في جريدة

Vocabulary

- musical instruments

Grammar

- adverbs of manner
- Wh-question with how (simple past tense)
- ظروف الحال
- السؤال باستخدام أداة الاستفهام (كيف) في زمن الماضي البسيط

CHECK
اختبر

• العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
• العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.
• لصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.
• وكراسة المعاصر التفاعلية لإتقان الوحدة.



Conversation Time

SB page 1 WB page 1

Main Book
OR
Time Saving
اختر طريقة شريك
مشاركتك بين كتاب الشرح
أو الكراسة التفاعلية
صفحة 3

Key Vocabulary

- concert حفلة موسيقية
- the music room حجرة الموسيقى
- bass الباص (آلة تشبه الكمان)
- help يساعد - مساعدة
- get ready يستعد / يجهز

Active Vocabulary

- sure متأكد / أكيد
- What ...? ما / ماذا ...؟
- over there هناك
- by the window بجانب النافذة
- by myself بنفسي / بمفردي
- so جدًا / ذلك
- heavy ثقيل
- here هنا
- Look out ! = احترس! / احذرا! / انتبه!
- Watch out !
- behind خلف / وراء
- box صندوق

لاحظ

- * تستخدم (help) كاسم بمعنى (مساعدة) :
- Do you want some help ?
- * وتستخدم (help) كفعل بمعنى (يساعد) :
- help → inf. المصدر / to + inf. المصدر
- Salma helps Lara clean up the room.
- Salma helps Lara to clean up the room.

لاحظ

- * تستخدم (by) بمعنى (بجوار / بجانب / بالقرب من) إذا جاء بعدها مكان.
- by the window
- * تستخدم (so) بمعنى (جدًا) إذا جاء بعدها صفة :
- It's so heavy.
- إنه ثقيل جدًا.
- * وتستخدم بمعنى (ذلك) إذا لم يأت بعدها صفة :
- I think so.
- اعتقد ذلك.

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs		Irregular Verbs	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
help يساعد	helped	get ready يستعد	got ready
clean up ينظف	cleaned up	put يضع	put
move يتحرك / ينقل	moved	take يأخذ	took
lift يرفع	lifted	go on يحدث	went on

Exercise on Vocabulary

Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. **WB** himself - itself - your - herself (.....)
2. music room - clean - kitchen - school (.....)
3. move - concert - lift - help (.....)
4. under - in - behind - sure (.....)
5. ready - happy - bass - hot (.....)

The School Concert

شخصيات المحادثة



Mona
منى

Kareem
كريم

Miss Nadia
استاذة نادية

موضوع المحادثة

In today's conversation, Kareem is cleaning up the music room to help his teacher to get ready for the concert. Mona wants to help him.

في محادثة اليوم، كريم ينظف حجرة الموسيقى لكي يساعد معلمة الاستعداد للحفل الموسيقي. منى تريد أن تساعد.

A Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.

Mona : Hi, Kareem! What are you doing?

Kareem : I'm helping Mr. Khaled clean up the music room. He's getting ready for the concert.

منى : أولاً يا كريم! ماذا تفعل؟

كريم : أنا أساعد الأستاذ خالد في تنظيف حجرة الموسيقى. إنه يستعد للحفل الموسيقي.

Mona : Can I help you?
Kareem : Sure. You can move the bass.

منى : هل يمكنني مساعدتك؟
كريم : بالتأكيد. يمكنك أن تحركي آلة الباص.

Kareem : Put it over there, by the window.

كريم : ضعها هناك بجانب الشباك.

Mona : Ugh! I can't lift it by myself. It's so heavy.

منى : أوه! أنا لا أستطيع أن أرفعها بنفسى. إنها ثقيلة جداً.

Kareem : Here. I'll take it.

كريم : هنا ، أنا سوف آخذها.

Mona : Look out! There's a box behind you!

منى : احترس! يوجد صندوق خلفك!

Kareem : Ahhhh!

كريم : آه!

Miss Nadia : What's going on in here?

استاذة نادية : ماذا يحدث هنا؟

Kareem : We're cleaning up.

كريم : نحن نظف.

Language Functions



Hi, Kareem! What are you doing?

I'm helping Mr. Khaled clean up the music room. He's getting ready for the concert.

• للسؤال عما يفعله شخص ما الآن نستخدم :

- What are you doing?

- ماذا تفعل ؟

• وللدرد نستخدم :

- I'm + verb + ing ...
I'm helping Mr. Khaled.

- يستعد لـ / يجهز لـ get ready for

2

- لعرض المساعدة على شخص ما نستخدم :
- Can I help you?
- Do you want some help?
- هل يمكنني أن أساعدك?
- هل تريد أي مساعدة?
• للرد بالموافقة نستخدم :
- Sure. بالتأكيد.
• للرد بعدم الموافقة نستخدم :
- No, thanks. لا شكرًا.

Can I help you?



Sure. You can move the bass.

Put it over there, by the window.



Ugh! I can't lift it by myself.

4

- تستخدم للتعبير عن اتخاذ قرار سريع أثناء الحديث.
... مصدر الفعل + will + inf.
- سوف آخذها. - I'll take it.

It's so heavy.



Here, I'll take it.

3

- عند إعطاء الأوامر بالقيام بفعل شيء ما نستخدم (مصدر الفعل + inf.) في بداية الجملة.
- Put it over there, by the window.
• للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على فعل شيء ما نستخدم :
... المصدر + can't + inf. فاعل
- لا يمكنني أن
- I can't lift it by myself.

6

- للسؤال عما يحدث في مكان ما نستخدم :
- What's going on in here?
- ماذا يحدث هنا ؟



Look out! There's a box behind you!

5

- للتحذير ولفت الانتباه نستخدم :
- Look out!
- انتبه! / احذرا! / احترس!

What's going on in here?



We're cleaning up.

Exercise on Language Functions

• Listen and complete : استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- Maha : What are you doing, Heba ?
Heba : I am helping Mr. Khaled (1) up the music room.
Maha : Can I (2) you ?
Heba : Sure. You can (3) the bass.
Maha : Where (4) I put it ?
Heba : Over there, by the window.

B Role-play the conversation.

قم بلعبة تبادل الأدوار مع زملائك للمحادثة السابقة.

General Exercises

Conversation Time

1 Listen and complete : استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

Kareem : What are you doing, Mona?

Mona : I am cleaning up the (1) room.

Kareem : (2) I help you?

Mona : Sure. Can you put the bass by the (3) ?

Kareem : Ugh! It is so heavy.

Mona : Look out, Kareem! (4) is a box behind you.

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- WB you want some help ? (كفر الشيخ ٢٠١٧)
a. Does b. Do c. Are d. Have
- I can't move the bass. It's so (قنا ٢٠١٩)
a. little b. small c. heavy d. new
- Put it over there, the window. (شمال سيناء ٢٠١٤)
a. on b. to c. by d. for
- Huda is her mother clean up the kitchen.
a. playing b. helping c. doing d. reading
- SB What's on in here ?
a. putting b. going c. taking d. making
- Pupils can sing at the school (الاسكندرية - المنيرة ٢٠١٨)
a. shop b. concert c. kitchen d. market
- SB There's a box you. (أسبوط ٢٠١٦)
a. in b. into c. behind d. on
- Nader is ready for the concert. (الشرقية ٢٠١٥)
a. get b. getting c. gets d. got

General Exercises

3 Read the passage and answer the questions :

Next week, our school will have a concert. Mr. Tamer is our music teacher. He is getting ready for it. Kareem is cleaning up the music room to help his teacher. Mona wants to help, too. She wants to move the bass by the window, but it is so heavy. Kareem helps her to move it. Mr. Tamer is not happy to see the mess.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Mr Tamer is ready for the concert.
a. having b. playing c. getting d. helping
- The bass is so
a. light b. heavy c. small d. big

B. Answer the following questions :

- Who is the teacher of music ?
.....
- Why is Kareem cleaning up the music room ?
.....

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

- SB here - going on - What - in - 's ?
.....
- SB can't - by - myself - I - lift - it. (القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠١٩)
.....

5 Punctuate the following sentences :

- I m helping Tarek to do his work (القاهرة ٢٠١٦)
.....
- what are you doing, Kareem
.....



Word Time

SB page 2 WB page 2



Word Time

A Listen and repeat.


استمع وردد.

Key Vocabulary

Musical Instruments

1 tuba

التوبا / البوق

2 flute

الفلوت / الناي

3 cymbals

الضججات

4 drums

طبول

5 xylophone

إكسيليفون

6 electric keyboard

بيانو / أورج كهربائي

7 harp

آلة الهارب (ميثارة)

8 cello

آلة التشلو

9 recorder

المزمار الخشبي

10 trumpet

ترومبيت / آلة البوق

حرف (c) في كلمة (cello) يتنطق /t/ مثل صوت (تش) في اللغة العربية.
حرف (x) في كلمة (xylophone) يتنطق مثل صوت /z/.



Vocabulary

stomach ache
How many?
message
quiet
together
bottle

ألم في المعدة
كم عدد
رسالة
هادئ
معا
زجاجة

water
enough
perfect
practise (v)
practice (n)
violin

ماء
كاف / بما فيه الكفاية
متقن / تام / كامل
يتدرب / يمارس
التدريب / الممارسة
آلة الكمان / كمنجه

Important expressions and prepositions

1. have a stomach ache
2. take a message
3. Oh, dear!
4. Sh! Be quiet!
5. Sorry!
6. play the violin
7. Practice makes perfect!

١. يصاب بألم في المعدة
٢. يأخذ رسالة
٣. أوه! يا عزيزي! (تعبير يقال عند الاندهاش أو الأسى).
٤. اسكت! كن هادئاً!
٥. آسف!
٦. يعزف على آلة الكمان
٧. الممارسة تؤدي بك إلى الإتقان!

B Point and say the words.

C Listen and point.

Boy : Mum, I have a stomach ache.

Mother : How many bottles of water did you have at dinner?

Boy : Three.

Mother : Oh, dear!



Woman : Hi. Is Yasser there ? He isn't?
Can you take a message ? This is Basma Ahmed.

Man : Sh! Be quiet!

Woman : Sorry!



Boy 1 : I like playing the violin, but I don't practise enough.
Boy 2 : Well, practice makes perfect!
Boy 1 : Do you want to practise together?
Boy 2 : Sure!



STRUCTURE

WB page 2

	Present Simple	المضارع البسيط	Past Simple	الماضي البسيط
Formation	التصريف الأول للفعل مع الضمائر (I , We , You , They) أو (اسم جمع) ومضاف اليه s أو es أو ies مع (He , She , It) أو (اسم مفرد)	التصريف الثاني للفعل (مصدر الفعل) مضاف اليه (d أو ed أو ied) إذا كان فعل منتظم. ويحفظ كما هو إذا كان الفعل غير منتظم.		
Usage	يعبر عن : ١- حقيقة ٢- عادة ٣- فعل متكرر		يعبر عن فعل حدث في زمن الماضي و انتهى.	
Examples	- She plays the flute every week. - I play the cello. - He plays the harp.		- Last year, she played the flute. - They played the drums. - I ate ice cream yesterday.	

Learn

تعلم

معلومة إثرائية

play :

He plays the violin.

يعزف (تأتي مع جميع الآلات الموسيقية)



hit :

She hits the drums.

يقرقع / يبدق (تأتي مع بعض الآلات الموسيقية مثل الطبل)



blow :

She blows the trumpet.

ينفخ (مع الآلات الموسيقية : توبا - البوق - المزمار الخشبى)



General Exercises

Word Time

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. recorder - trumpet - drum - water (الشرقية - الزقازيق ٢٠١٩) (.....)
2. practise - want - harp - play (.....)
3. flute - train - drum - tuba (بنى سويف - بيا ٢٠١٨) (.....)
4. snack - lunch - breakfast - message (.....)
5. SB trumpet - dinner - drum - cello (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can see the violin in the room. (الدقهلية - المنصورة ٢٠١٩)
 - a. music
 - b. bottle
 - c. book
 - d. art
2. He plays the slowly. (القاهرة - البساتين ودار السلام ٢٠١٨ / الأقصر / جنوب سيناء ٢٠١٥)
 - a. shoes
 - b. house
 - c. car
 - d. drums
3. Last year, he the trumpet.
 - a. play
 - b. played
 - c. playing
 - d. plays
4. The is a musical instrument.
 - a. tape
 - b. tree
 - c. tuba
 - d. table
5. My sister went to the doctor because she had a
 - a. cymbal
 - b. hand
 - c. stomach
 - d. stomach ache
6. instrument can you play? - The drums. (المنوفية ٢٠١٩)
 - a. Where
 - b. When
 - c. How
 - d. What
7. SB I like playing the violin, but I don't enough.
 - a. practise
 - b. eat
 - c. read
 - d. run
8. SB Can you a message, please?
 - a. takes
 - b. took
 - c. take
 - d. taking

Word Time

(العربية ٢٠١٧)

9. Ali football every day.
 - a. play
 - b. playing
 - c. plays
 - d. to play

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. Do - you - want - together - to - practise ?
2. the - like - I - playing - piano.

4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences: "Musical instruments"

جاء حنه في نهاية الكتاب



Spotlight

راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالي

(WORD TIME) أهم المفردات اللغوية التي وردت في درس الـ

tuba	انتوبا (البوق)	electric keyboard	بيانو / أورج كهربائي
flute	الفلوت (الناي)	harp	آلة الهارب (قيثارة)
cymbals	الضنجات	cello	آلة التشلو
drums	طبول	recorder	المزمار الخشبي
xylophone	اكسيليفون	trumpet	ترومبيت (آلة البوق)



Focus & Practice Time

SB pages 3&4 WB pages 3&4

Focus Time

A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

1 well بطريقة جيدة



2 badly بطريقة سيئة



3 quietly بهدوء



4 loudly بصوت عال



5 quickly بسرعة



6 slowly ببطء



7 happily بسعادة



8 sadly بحزن



good → well
loud → loudly
happy → happily

bad → badly
quick → quickly
sad → sadly

quiet → quietly
slow → slowly

Focus Time

استمع وردد.

B Listen and repeat.

- How did he play the tuba ?
- He played the tuba well.
- How did they play the tuba ?
- They played the tuba well.



LANGUAGE FOCUS

ظروف الحال (الكيفية) Adverbs of manner

الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتي بعده و يتكون من إضافة (ly) إلى الصفة المنتظمة. والظروف غير المنتظمة تحفظ كما هي.

الصفة adjective

Doctors help sick people.

Rodina is happy.

الصفة تصف الاسم و تأتي قبله أو بعد (verb to be).

الظرف adverb

Rodina plays the tuba happily.

الظرف يصف الفعل و يأتي بعده.

Regular المنتظم	
Adjective	Adverb
bad سيء	badly بطريقة سيئة
quiet هادي	quietly بهدوء
loud عال	loudly بصوت عال
quick سريع	quickly بسرعة
slow بطيء	slowly ببطء
happy سعيد	happily بسعادة
sad حزين	sadly بحزن
soft هادي	softly بهدوء / برفق

Irregular غير المنتظم	
Adjective	Adverb
good جيد	well جيدًا
fast سريع	fast بسرعة
hard صعب	hard بصعوبة
right صحيح	right بطريقة صحيحة
wrong خطأ	wrong بطريقة خاطئة

1 Formation : التكوين

- ★ لتكوين الظرف نضيف (ly) للصفة المنتظمة.
 slow → slowly quick → quickly
 ★ اما الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (y) تستبدل (y) بـ (i) و نضيف (ly).
 happy → happily noisy → noisily easy → easily
 ★ هناك صفات غير منتظمة تحفظ كما هي لا يضاف إليها (ly) عند تحويلها إلى ظرف.
 good → well
 ★ هناك صفات تبقى كما هي عند تحويلها إلى ظرف (حال).
 fast → fast hard → hard right → right late → late

2 Usage : الاستخدام

- ★ يستخدم الظرف بعد الفعل ليصفه.
 - Ali walks slowly.
 ★ يستخدم الظرف لوصف حدث / فعل (الطريقة التي يؤدي بها شخص ما شيئاً ما).
 - Rodina sings well. - He works slowly.

3 Wh-questions with How (simple past tense)

★ السؤال عن الظرف في زمن الماضي البسيط باستخدام (How ...?) :


How + did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل . ؟


★ وللإجابة نستخدم :


Subject + verb + object + adverb.

ظرف مفعول فعل فاعل

 How did she play the xylophone?

 She played the xylophone happily.


 How did you play the drums?


 I played the drums quickly.



C Look at page (2). Listen and point.

انظر إلى صفحة (٢) في كتاب الطالب ثم استمع وأشر.

 How did she play the flute?

 She played the flute well.



Exercise on Language Focus

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- How your sister play the tuba yesterday ? (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠١٩)
 a. are b. do c. did d. does
- How did they play the drums ? - They played them
 a. good b. quiet c. bad d. well
- She is a girl. (البحيرة - الدلجات ٢٠١٨)
 a. good b. well c. badly d. sadly
- Salma walks She is tired.
 a. slow b. slower c. slowly d. slowest
- He the electric keyboard happily.
 a. play b. playing c. played d. are playing
- Roqia is She has a new dress.
 a. happily b. happy c. happier d. happiest
- She plays the cello (قنا ٢٠١٥)
 a. quick b. quiet c. quietly d. loud
- They played the harp
 a. loudly b. loud c. good d. bad

Practice Time

A Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

How did he play the recorder?

- He played the recorder sadly.

How did she play the xylophone?

1 She played the xylophone happily.

she / xylophone?
happilyyou / drums?
quickly

2 I played the drums quickly.

he / harp?
sadly

How did he play the harp?

3

he / electric keyboard?
slowly

How did he play the electric keyboard?

4 He played the electric keyboard slowly.

you / cymbals?
loudly

5 We played the cymbals loudly.

she / trumpet?
badly6 How did she play the trumpet?
She played the trumpet badly.they / flute?
well

7 How did they play the flute?

she / cello?
quietly

8 She played the cello quietly.



B Look at page (2). Practise with a partner.

انظر إلى الصورة صفحة (٢) في كتاب الطالب ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

How did she play the xylophone?

She played the xylophone happily.



General Exercises

Focus Time & Practice Time

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. loudly - quickly - good - badly (الغريبة - سمفونود ٢. ١٨) (.....)
2. soft - play - hit - blow (.....)
3. harp - flute - happy - cello (فنا ٢. ١٤) (.....)
4. loudly - brother - sister - father (.....)
5. happy - well - sad - good (القاهرة - غرب القاهرة ٢. ١٨) (.....)

2 SB Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last week, my school had a concert. The teachers helped the students get ready for it. Ahmed and Adel cleaned up the music room. Tamer played the recorder sadly because he was very sad. Amira played the cello quietly. We were very happy. After the concert, the students and the teachers had a pizza party. I went home late at night.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. After the concert, the students and the teachers had a party.
a. birthday b. drink c. pizza d. tea
2. cleaned up the music room.
a. Ahmed and Adel b. Amira
c. Tamer d. Tamer and Amira

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When did the school have a concert ?
.....
4. How did Amira play the cello ?
.....

(الطوبى ٢. ١٤)

General Exercises

جواب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

3 Write an email of SEVEN sentences:

Write an email to your friend Emad to tell him about your musical instrument. Your name is Atef and your email address is atef@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is emad@gmail.com.

To :
From :
Subject :

(الفيوم - ابشواى ٢. ١٨)

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. did - How - harp - play - the - he ?

(القليوبية - طوخ ٢. ١٨ / الفيوم ٢. ١٦)

2. xylophone - She - happily - played - the.

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. how did he play the cymbals

2. Soha doesn't go to school on friday.

(أسوط ٢. ١٦)



Reading & Your Time

SB pages 5&6 WB pages 5&6

Key Vocabulary

performance	أداء / عرض
the hit	الأكثر نجاحًا
play	مسرحية
soloist	عازف أو مُغَنٍّ منفرد
chorus	كورس (فريق الغناء)
orchestra	أوركسترا (فريق موسيقى)
spring	فصل الربيع

لاحظ

النطق الصوتي لحرفي الـ (ch) في كلمة (chorus) وكلمة (orchestra) ينطقان /k/.

Active Vocabulary

students	طلاب	second	الثاني
night	ليلة	elementary school =	مدرسة ابتدائية
evening	المساء	primary school	
a lot of	كثير من	fall	فصل الخريف
songs	أغاني	grade	صف (دراسي)
prize	جائزة	What kind ?	ما نوع ؟
party	حفلة	write a play	يؤلف مسرحية
after	بعد	on the violin	على (آلة الكمان)
first	الأول		

لاحظ

* تستخدم (آلة موسيقية + on) بمعنى يعزف على الآلة الموسيقية :
- Youssef Hamdy was the soloist on the violin.

Conjugation of verbs

تعريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs	أفعال منتظمة	Irregular Verbs	أفعال غير منتظمة
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
perform يؤدي / يمثل	performed	give يعطي	gave
		write يكتب	wrote
		sing يغني	sang
		wake up يستيقظ	woke up

Reading Time

Important expressions and prepositions

1. Wake up!
2. It was the hit of the evening.
3. The performance was very good.
4. give a performance
5. have a party
6. perform a play
7. perform music
8. write a play

١. استيقظ !
٢. إنه كان الحدث الأكثر نجاحًا في المساء.
٣. العرض كان جيدًا جدًا.
٤. يقدم عرضًا (موسيقيًا أو مسرحيًا)
٥. يقيم حفلة
٦. يؤدي عرضًا مسرحيًا
٧. يؤدي عرضًا موسيقيًا
٨. يؤلف مسرحية

مفردات خاصة بالموسيقى و الغناء قد لا تكون مرت على الطالب من قبل

a chorus
an orchestra

«الكورس» هو مجموعة من الأشخاص يؤديون أغنية.
«الأوركسترا» هو مجموعة من الأشخاص يقومون بعزف الموسيقى باستخدام الآلات الموسيقية المختلفة.

a soloist

هو شخص يقوم بالعزف أو الغناء منفردًا.

Bach

«باخ» هو مؤلف موسيقى ألماني.

Beethoven

«بيتهوفن» هو ملحن و عازف بيانو ألماني.

Mozart

«موزارت» هو مؤلف موسيقى نمساوي.

Chopin

«شوبين» هو مؤلف موسيقى بولندي.

Reading Time

Cairo Students Give Spring Performance

SB page 5

Introduction : مقدمة

The passage is from a newspaper about the spring performance at Cairo School.
الفقرة من جريدة عن عرض فصل الربيع في مدرسة القاهرة.

Main Points : نقاط رئيسية

1. Students in the first and second years wrote and performed a play.
١. قام طلاب السنة الأولى والثانية بتأليف مسرحية وقاموا بعرضها.

Unit 6

2. The chorus sang a lot of songs. ج. غنى الكورال الكثير من الأغاني.
3. Amira Mohamed was the soloist. She sang well. د. أميرة محمد غنت منفردة. غنت جيدًا.
4. The orchestra performed music by Bach and Beethoven. هـ. قامت الأوركسترا بعزف موسيقى من تأليف الموسيقار باخ والموسيقار بيتهوفن.
5. Youssef Hamdy was the soloist on the violin. و. يوسف حمدي عزف منفردًا على آلة الكمان.
6. After the performance, the school had a pizza party. ز. بعد العرض، ذهب طلاب المدرسة لتناول البيتزا.

A Listen and read along.

استمع واقرأ.

Cairo Students Give Spring Performance

by Rania Ali

The students at Cairo School gave their spring performance ⁽¹⁾ last night. Students in the first and second years wrote and performed a play ⁽²⁾, Wake Up! Spring Is Here! It was the hit ⁽³⁾ of the evening.

The chorus ⁽⁴⁾ and orchestra ⁽⁵⁾ performances were very good. The chorus sang a lot of songs. Amira Mohamed was the soloist ⁽⁶⁾. She sang well. The orchestra performed music by Bach and Beethoven. Youssef Hamdy was the soloist on the violin.

After the performance, the school had a pizza party at Grandpa Ali's for the students, their families and the teachers.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) أداء / عرض
- (2) مسرحية
- (3) الأكثر نجاحًا
- (4) فرقة الغناء
- (5) فرقة الموسيقى
- (6) بطل أو فنان منفرد

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The school had a pizza yesterday. (حبوب سبتاء - الطور ١٨)
a. concert b. party c. orchestra d. restaurant
2. The chorus sang a lot of
a. songs b. wings c. windows d. works (القاهرة - حلوان ١٨)
3. The orchestra music by Bach.
a. moved b. performed c. ate d. took
4. The spring performance was the of the evening.
a. hot b. hit c. hat d. heart
5. **SB** Youssef Hamdy was the on the violin.
a. teacher b. soloist c. singer d. farmer
6. The students wrote and performed a
a. school b. play c. pizza d. party
7. **WB** The teachers' orchestra performed by Mozart and Chopin.
a. book b. bag c. orange d. music
8. The orchestra gave their spring last night. (المنوعة ١٧)
a. food b. favour c. flavour d. performance

B Listen and circle True or False.

1. The students gave their winter performance last night. True False
2. The students in the first and second years wrote and performed a play. True False
3. There weren't any soloists in the performance. True False
4. After the performance, there was an ice cream party. True False

C Read the question. Write the answer.

- When was the performance?
The performance was last night.
- Who sang songs?
The chorus sang songs.
- What did the orchestra perform?
The orchestra performed music by Bach and Beethoven.
- What kind of party did the school have?
The school had a pizza party.

Giza Teachers Give Fall Performance

WB page 5

Introduction : مقدمة

The passage is from a newspaper about Giza Elementary School teachers' performance.

فقرة من جريدة عن العرض المسرحي لمعلمين مدرسة الجيزة الابتدائية.

Main Points : نقاط رئيسية

- The first grade teachers wrote and performed a play.
- The teachers' chorus sang a lot of songs.
- Omar Khaled was the soloist. He sang well.
- The teachers' orchestra performed music by Mozart and Chopin.
- After the performance, there was a spaghetti dinner.

اقرأ النص في صفحة workbook كتاب المعاصر.

Your Time

A Listen and answer the questions.

استمع إلى الأسئلة ثم أجب عليها من خلال معرفتك.

- Can you ride a bike quickly?

- Do you do your homework quietly?
- What do you do well?
- Do you ever sing loudly?

B Pair work. Write. Then ask your partner.

في ثنائيات اكتب ثم اسأل زميلك.

What do you do quietly? I sing quietly.

	You	Your partner
1. quietly
2. loudly
3. sadly
4. slowly
5. happily

C Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When the performance?
a. did b. was c. does d. can
- I the piano loudly every day.
a. play b. playing c. plays d. played
- The students at Cairo School gave their spring last night.
a. food b. flavour c. performance d. favour
- What of party did you have?
a. high b. colour c. fast d. kind
- Please, your papers from one to five.
a. numbers b. number c. numbered d. numbering

General Exercises

Reading & Your Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The school sang a lot of songs. (الدقهلية ٢٠١٥)
a. chorus b. drums c. door d. homework
- The school had a pizza
a. party b. song c. music d. performance
- Hamdy was the He played the violin.
a. orchestra b. soloist c. chorus d. teacher
- Do you play the flute ?
a. well b. good c. bad d. quiet
- What the orchestra perform yesterday ?
a. does b. do c. did d. doing
- WB** performed the play ? - The first grade teachers.
a. What b. When c. Who d. Where
- Can you ride a bike ?
a. quick b. quickly c. quickest d. quicker
- Everyone liked our play. It was the of the evening. (مطروح ٢٠١٥)
a. hit b. heat c. hot d. hat

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- drum - trumpet - bike - violin (الغريبة - طنطا ٢٠١٩) (.....)
- orchestra - chorus - students - school (الغريبة طنطا ٢٠١٩) (.....)
- performed - played - soloist - sang (.....)
- bad - good - loud - song (.....)
- night - afternoon - Monday - morning (.....)

Your Time

3 **WB** Read the passage and answer the questions:

The teachers at Giza Elementary School gave their fall performance last night. The first grade teachers wrote and performed a play. It was very good. The teachers' chorus sang a lot of songs. Omar Khaled was the soloist. He sang well. The teachers' orchestra performed music by Mozart and Chopin. After the performance, there was a spaghetti dinner at Big Mama's Restaurant.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The teachers at Giza School performed a play.
a. Secondary b. Elementary c. Preparatory d. Kindergarten
- The teachers' sang a lot of songs.
a. chorus b. group c. team d. orchestra

B. Answer the following questions:

- Who gave the fall performance last night?
.....
- Where was the spaghetti dinner?
.....

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

- have - party - did - the school - kind of - What ?
(أسوان - ادفو / القاهرة - حدائق القبة ٢٠١٨)
- sang - songs - The - chorus.
(البحيرة - الدلجات ٢٠١٨)

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

- did Tarek see bassem last night?
.....
- SB** omar khaled was the soloist
.....

١. تعلم كيفية التعامل مع الفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني.



Study

Musical instruments

آلات موسيقية

bass	tuba	cello
flute	harp	violin

Adverbs

ظروف الحال

happily	quickly	badly
sadly	slowly	well

People

أشخاص

soloist	orchestra	chorus
---------	-----------	--------

- The (آلة موسيقية) is my favourite musical instrument.
The bass is my favourite musical instrument.
- I like playing the (آلة موسيقية).
I like playing the flute.
- I can play the (آلة موسيقية) (حال).
I can play the drums quickly.
- I'm the soloist on the (آلة موسيقية).
I'm the soloist on the violin.
- The (أشخاص) gave a good performance.
The orchestra gave a good performance.



Try

بعد دراسة ما سبق حاول أن تكون جمل باستخدام التعبيرات السابقة.

The Word	Try to make a sentence
harp	I like playing the harp.
cello	
slowly	
soloist	



Answer

Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences :

"The school concert"

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

- played - **He** - drums - the - badly.
- can - bass - **You** - the - move.

فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
1		
2	can move	

٢ الجمل الأمرية

- the - **Don't** - bass - the window - by - put.
- one - your - **Number** - papers - from - to five.

Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
1		
2		

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

- did - **How** - harp - the - play - she ?
- do - **What** - you - well - do ?

كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة
1				
2		you		

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

- you - **Do** - some - help - want ?
- you - **Can** - help - I ?

فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة
1			
2			

El Moasser student's writing skill في نهاية كتاب الشرح

لمزيد من التدريبات

Musical instruments and school concert project worksheet

ورقة بحثية عن الآلات الموسيقية والحفل المدرسي



Objectives الأهداف

Talk about the musical instruments and the school concert.

تحدث عن الآلات الموسيقية والحفل الموسيقي المدرسي.

Get started الاستعد

1. How did he play the harp?

١. كيف عزف على آلة الهارب (القيثارة)؟



2. How was the musical performance?

٢. كيف كان العرض الموسيقي؟



★ Project المشروع

Make a poster about a school musical concert.

قم بعمل ملصق (بوستر) عن حفل المدرسة الموسيقي.

★ Project resources مصادر المشروع

* <https://www.ekb.eg>

بنك المعرفة المصري

* The internet الإنترنت

* Student's books of different subjects الكتب المدرسية للمواد المختلفة

★ Your Poster

Self Assessment Activity التقييم الذاتي



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
 قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد
 قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

في نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادرًا على

1 I can say these words. أستطيع نطق الكلمات الآتية.

<input type="checkbox"/> tuba	<input type="checkbox"/> badly
<input type="checkbox"/> flute	<input type="checkbox"/> quietly
<input type="checkbox"/> cymbals	<input type="checkbox"/> loudly
<input type="checkbox"/> xylophone	<input type="checkbox"/> quickly

2 I can read and write these sentences. أستطيع قراءة وكتابة الجمل الآتية.

- ☐ How did he play the tuba?
- ☐ The chorus sang a lot of songs.
- ☐ Youssef Hamdy was the soloist on the violin.
- ☐ I played the drums sadly.

Teacher's notes ملاحظات المعلم

Parent's notes ملاحظات ولي الأمر

جزء المتابعة اليومية في نهاية كتاب الشرح

لمزيد من التدريبات

Revision

Unit



هذا الجزء يساعدك على تنمية مهارات التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية
كيفية التعامل مع السؤال الأول والثاني في ورقة الامتحان

1 Conversation Time

- Mona** : Hi, Kareem! What are you doing ?
Kareem : I'm helping Mr. Khaled clean up the music room⁽¹⁾. He's getting ready⁽²⁾ for the concert⁽³⁾.
Mona : Can I help you ?
Kareem : Sure. You can move the bass⁽⁴⁾. Put it over there, by the window.
Mona : Ugh! I can't lift⁽⁵⁾ it by myself. It's so heavy
Kareem : Here. I'll take it.
Mona : Look out! There's a box behind you!
Kareem : Ahhhh!
Miss Nadia : What's going on⁽⁶⁾ in here?
Kareem : We're cleaning up.

Check Vocabulary
 (1) حجرة الموسيقى
 (2) يستعد / يجهز
 (3) حفلة موسيقية
 (4) آلة التشبيه الكمان
 (5) يرفع
 (6) يحدث

كيفية التعامل مع السؤال الثالث والرابع والخامس في ورقة الإمتحان

2 Word Time

tuba	التوبا (آلة موسيقية تشبه البوق)	harp	آلة الهارب (قيثارة)
flute	الفلوت (آلة نفخ موسيقية)	electric keyboard	أورج / بيانو كهربائي
cymbals	صنجات (آلات موسيقية)	cello	تسلو (آلة عزف تشبه الكمان ولكن أكبر)
drum	طبل	trumpet	بوق (آلة نفخ)
xylophone	إكسيليفون		
recorder	المزمار الخشبي (نوع من آلات النفخ)		

Revision

3 Focus Time & Practice Time

Adverbs of manner

badly	بطريقة سيئة	slowly	ببطء
quietly	بهدهوء	happily	بسعادة
loudly	بصوت عال / مرتفع	sadly	بحزن
quickly	بسرعة	softly	بهدهوء

هناك ظروف غير منتظمة لا يضاف لها "ly" وتحفظ كما هي مثل :
 good → well
 * How did he play the tuba ? - He played the tuba well.

4 Difficult questions in the exam paper with model answers.

الأسئلة التي قد تكون صعبة خاصة بالوحدة في الورقة الامتحانية بإجاباتها النموذجية

1 Rearrange the following sentences:

© Important sentences : جمل هامة :

1. Students in the first and second years wrote and performed a play.
2. The chorus sang a lot of songs.
3. Amira Mohamed was the soloist. She sang well.
4. The orchestra performed music by Bach and Beethoven.
5. Youssef Hamdy was the soloist on the violin.
6. After the performance, the school had a pizza party.

2 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"The music room"

This is the music room in my school. We have a concert. We get ready for it. I move the bass. My friend is helping me clean up. We have trumpet, tuba and drums. The teacher is happy. We will have the concert next week.

A. Fill in the blanks.

أملأ الفراغات التالية

want - out - helping - can - help - music - cleaning - going - box

Mona : What are you doing ?

Kareem : I'm helping Mr. Khalel clean up the music room.Mona : Do you want some help ?Kareem : Sure. You move the bass.Mona : Look out ! There's a box behind you!

Kareem : Ahhhh !

Miss Nadia : What's on in here ?Kareem : We're cleaning up.

B. Read and match.

أقرأ و اكتب

1. Ugh! I can't lift it by myself. • **c**

2. Here, I'll take it. •

3. Put it over there, by the window. •

4. Hi, Ameer. What are you doing ? • **a**

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I am helping Mr. Khalel clean up the music room.a. playing b. helping c. doing d. reading

2. Do you want some help ?

a. Do b. Does c. Are d. Have3. There's a box in you.a. in b. into c. behind d. on4. You move the bass.

a. are b. can c. have d. do

B. Look and write.

انظر و اكتب

1. Last year she played the flute.Now she plays the xylophone.2. Last year he played the trumpet.Now he plays the cymbals.

3.

A. Read and write.

اقرأ و اكتب

1. quiet → quietly

3. slow → slowly

5. quick →

7. happy →

2. bad → badly

4. loud →

6. sad →

8. good → well

B. Look and circle the correct word.

انظر و دأب الكلمة السليمة

She plays the drums slowly (quickly).She plays the harp sadly happily.They play the tuba quietly loudly.I play the cello badly well.

C. Read and write.

اقرأ و اكتب



1. How did he play the tuba ?

He played the tuba well.

2. How did he play the harp ?

He played the harp happily.

3. How did they play the cymbals ?

They played the cymbals loudly.

4. How did she

A. Read and check.

اقرأ و اكتب

1. How did she play the cello ?

She played the cello softly.

2. How did they play the xylophone ?

They played the xylophone quickly.

3. How did he play the cymbals ?

He played the cymbals loudly.

B. Write the questions and answers. Then number the pictures.

اكتب الأسئلة والجوابات ثم راقب الصور

1. she / flute ? / sadly How did she play the flute ?She played the flute sadly.2. you / trumpet ? / well3. he / drums ? / quickly How did he play the drums ?He played the drums quickly.4. you / recorder ? / happily

A. Read and check Yes or No.

أقرأ و ضع علامة (Yes) أو (No).

Answers will vary.

	Yes	No
Do you play the flute well?		
Do you eat quickly?		
Do you talk quietly?		
Do you walk to school slowly?		
Do you sing loudly?		
Do you dance happily?		

اكتب و ارس

B. Write and draw.

I play the recorder.
What do you play?



Answers will vary

A. Read.

Giza Teachers Give Fall Performance
by Mustafa Farouk

The teachers at Giza Elementary School gave their fall performance last night. The first grade teachers wrote and performed a play. It was very good. The teachers' chorus sang a lot of songs. Omar Khaled was the soloist. He sang well. The teachers' orchestra performed music by Mozart and Chopin. After the performance, there was a spaghetti dinner at Big Mama's Restaurant.

B. Read and write.

1. The teachers ... at Giza Elementary School gave their fall performance ...
2. Omar Khaled sang with the teachers' chorus ... He was the soloist ... music by Mozart and Chopin.
3. The teachers' ... at Big Mama's after the
4. There was a spaghetti

C. Read the question. Write the answer.

1. Who performed the play?
The first grade teachers performed the play.
2. How did Omar Khaled sing?
3. Where was the spaghetti dinner?
It was at Big Mama's Restaurant.
4. When did the teachers give their fall performance?

Test 1

on Unit 6

Collected from Governorates & Directorates Examinations
اختبار على الوحدة مجمع من امتحانات المحافظات والإدارات

A Listening

1 Listen and circle:

1. a. We played football.
b. We played the drums.
2. a. He plays the piano slowly.
b. He plays the recorder slowly.
3. a. Were you the soloist of the chorus?
b. Are you the soloist of the chorus?
4. a. How did she play the trumpet?
b. How did she play the cello?

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

(القاهرة - مدينة نصر ٢٠١٩)

(السويس ٢٠١٩)

(بورسعيد ٢٠١٨)

(البحيرة - دمنهور ٢٠١٩)

2 Listen and complete:

- Toka : Do you (1) some help?
Roqia : Sure. You can (2) these toys in the toy box.
Toka : where (3) the toy box?
Roqia : It's (4) you, over there.
Toka : Thanks.
Roqia : You're welcome.

(الأлександرية - شرق ٢٠١٩)

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The orchestra is getting ready for the
a. match b. class c. concert d. sale
2. The orchestra music by Bach.
a. moved b. performed c. ate d. took
3. Do you some help?
a. want b. wanted c. wants d. to want
4. Our school gave a good last week.
a. mistake b. prize c. control d. performance



يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه
تلويحه

A Listening

1 Listen and circle:

- استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.
نموص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
- a. He plays the piano slowly.
b. He plays the drums well.
 - a. Sure. You can move the bass.
b. Yes, you can put the bass over there.
 - a. Can you take a message?
b. Can you open the window, please?
 - a. What are you cleaning?
b. What are you doing?

2 Listen and complete:

- استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل.
نموص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
- Daddy : When was the spring performance?
Huda : It (1) last Friday.
Daddy : Who (2) songs?
Huda : Amira was the (3)
Daddy : What did the (4) perform?
Huda : They performed music by Beethoven.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ahmed is blowing the
a. violin
b. cello
c. electric keyboard
d. flute
- It's too heavy. I can't it.
a. play
b. put
c. lift
d. make
- WB** The orchestra music by Mozart.
a. performed
b. made
c. gave
d. hit

- The is my favourite musical instrument.
a. drum
b. football
c. giraffe
d. play
- Mum can't go to the concert. She ready.
a. is
b. isn't
c. aren't
d. are
- He plays the tuba We all like his performance.
a. sad
b. good
c. slow
d. well
- Tarek is a pupil.
a. badly
b. quickly
c. well
d. good
- The chorus a lot of songs last night.
a. singing
b. sang
c. sing
d. sings

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- trumpet - bass - look - drum (.....)
- ready - good - sing - quick (.....)
- badly - soft - slowly - loudly (.....)
- teacher - soloist - singer - flute (.....)
- behind - over - on - heavy (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Dear Grandpa,
I'm sorry, you missed our spring performance. It was a great show. It was very good. The chorus sang a lot of songs. They sang very loudly. The soloist, Amira Mohamed, sang well. I played the recorder in the orchestra. Because I was next to the cymbals, I couldn't hear my recorder. Youssef Hamdy played the violin happily. My parents had a good time. We had a pizza party at Grandpa Ali's after the performance. We will perform again next autumn. Please, come!
Love,
Doaa

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Amira Mohamed sang
a. well
b. badly
c. quietly
d. loudly

Unit 6

2. Youssef Hamdy played the happily.
a. tuba b. violin c. cymbals d. harp

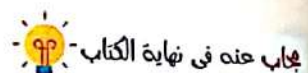
B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did they do after the performance?
.....

4. Why couldn't Doaa hear her recorder?
.....

C Writing

- 6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:
"Spring performance"



- 7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. getting - She's - for - concert - ready - the.
.....

2. want - Do - you - help - some ?
.....

- 8 Punctuate the following sentences :

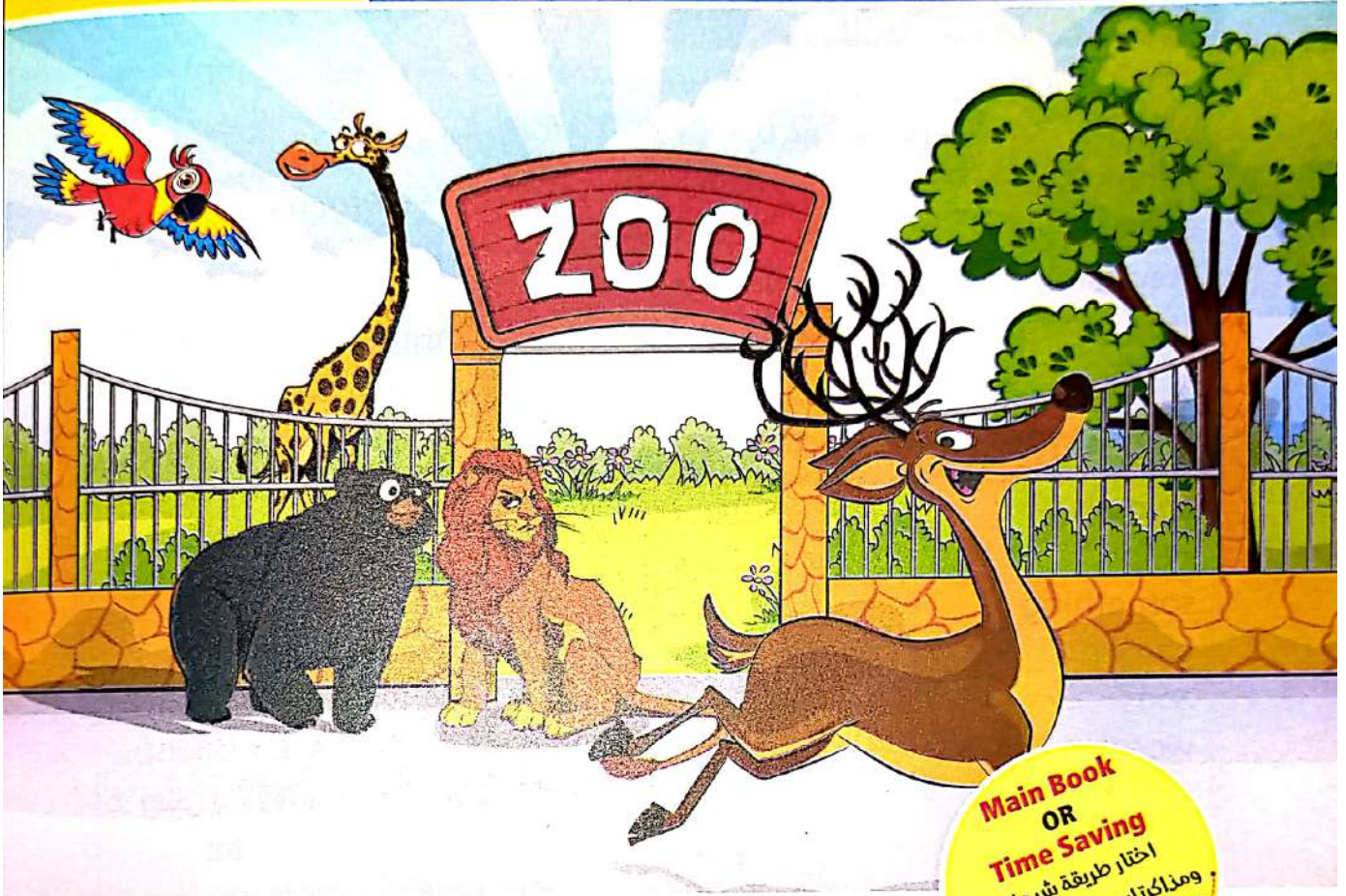
1. what do you do well
.....

2. i play the violin slowly
.....

UNIT 7

Zoo Animals Escape!

هروب حيوانات الحديقة



**Main Book
OR
Time Saving**
اختر طريقة شرح
ومذاكرتك بين كتاب الشرح
أو الكراسة التفاعلية
صفحة ٣

الأهداف العامة للوحدة : Aims of the Unit :

Listening/Speaking

- make an emergency telephone call
إجراء مكالمات تليفونية للطوارئ
- express actions that were in progress in the past
التعبير عن أحداث كانت مستمرة في الماضي
- identify speakers in a conversation
التعرف على المتحدثين في المحادثة

Reading

- read an information sign
قراءة لافتة معلومات

Vocabulary

- zoo animals
تعلم المفردات اللغوية : حيوانات حديقة الحيوان

Grammar

- Simple past tense of movement verbs
التعرف على أفعال الحركة في زمن الماضي البسيط
- Past continuous; when clauses
تعلم استخدام (when) في زمن الماضي المستمر

CHECK
اختبر

• استخدم كراسة المعاصر لمهارات الكتابة بنهاية الكتاب

• وكراسة المعاصر التفاعلية لإثقان الوحدة.

- * العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- * العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.
- * نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.



Conversation Time

SB page 7 WB page 7

Main Book
OR
Time Saving

اختار طريقة شرحك
مناقشة بين كتاب الشرح
في الكراسة التفاعلية
صفحة ٣

Key Vocabulary

emergency	طوارئ
wild	متوحش / غير أليف / بري
parents	الوالدين
officer	ضابط
Stay calm.	ابق هادئاً.
little	صغير

Active Vocabulary

animals	حيوانات
Help!	ساعدني! / النجدة!
something	شيء ما
garden	حديقة
zoo	حديقة حيوان
woman	سيدة
street	شارع
nurse	ممرضة
eye	عين
operator	عامل الهاتف
address	عنوان
should	ينبغي أن
take care of	يعتني بـ / يهتم بـ
kitchen	مطبخ
nervous	عصبى
angry	غاضب
noisy	صاخب / كثير الضوضاء
balcony	بلكونة
now	الآن
because	لأن

لا حظ
* ينطق حرف (c) في كلمة (officer)
وكلمة (emergency) مثل صوت
حرف الـ (s).
* حرف الـ (l) في كلمة (calm)
صامت (silent) لا ينطق.

لا حظ
١. حرف الـ (l) في كلمة (should) صامت
(silent) لا ينطق.
٢. يعتني بـ / يهتم بـ
* take care of = look after
٣. تبدأ أسماء الأشخاص والشوارع بحرف
كبير (capital).
- Ahmed Samy
- El-Salam Street

Conversation Time

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs		Irregular Verbs	
أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
escape يهرب	escaped	think يفكر / يعتقد	thought
stay يقيم	stayed	take care يعتني بـ	took care
call يتصل	called	send يرسل	sent

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- cinema - street - kitchen - Monday (.....)
- cinema - bank - walk - zoo (.....) (الحيزة - الهرم ٢٠١٨)
- happy - calm - nervous - sadly (.....) (القاهرة ٢٠١٦)
- teacher - room - nurse - doctor (.....)
- father - operator - sister - mother (.....)

At home

بالمزمل

• Characters الشخصيات المحادثة



• Topic الموضوع المحادثة

In today's conversation, Ahmed is at home with his sister, Hoda. His parents are at the cinema. There's something wrong in the garden and he is calling for help.

في محادثة اليوم، أحمد بالمزمل مع أخته هدى. ووالديه ذهبوا إلى السينما. ويوجد شيء ما غير عادي بالحديقة وهو يتصل بالنجدة للمساعدة.

A Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.

Operator: 122. What's the emergency?

Ahmed : Help! There's something in my garden !

Operator: What is it?

Ahmed : I think I think it's a wild animal ! I can see its eyes !

Operator: What's your name and address?

Ahmed : Ahmed Samy.
49 El-Salam Street.

Operator: Are your parents home?

Ahmed : No. They went to the cinema. I'm taking care of my little sister.

Ahmed : What should I do?

Operator: Stay calm. I'm sending an officer now.

Officer : Is this the wild animal?

Ahmed : Sorry, officer. I'll take him.

Hoda : Oh, my dog!

عامل التليفون : ١٢٢ معك. ما هي حالة الطوارئ لديك؟
احمد : النجدة! يوجد شيء ما في حديقتي!

عامل التليفون : ما هذا الشيء؟
احمد : أعتقد ... أعتقد أنه حيوان مفترس! أستطيع أن أرى عيناه!

عامل التليفون : ما اسمك وعنوانك؟
احمد : أحمد سامي وعنواني ٤٩ شارع السلام.

عامل التليفون : هل والدك بالمنزل؟
احمد : لا. هم ذهبوا إلى السينما. وأنا أعتني بأختي الصغيرة.

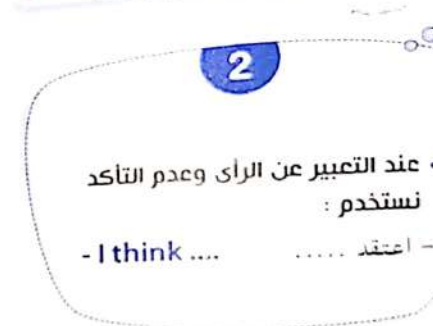
احمد : ماذا ينبغي أن أفعل؟
عامل التليفون : إهدأ و أرسل لك ضابطاً الآن.

الضابط : هل هذا هو الحيوان المفترس؟
احمد : آسف. أيها الضابط. أنا سوف أخذه.
هدى : آوه، إنه كلبى!

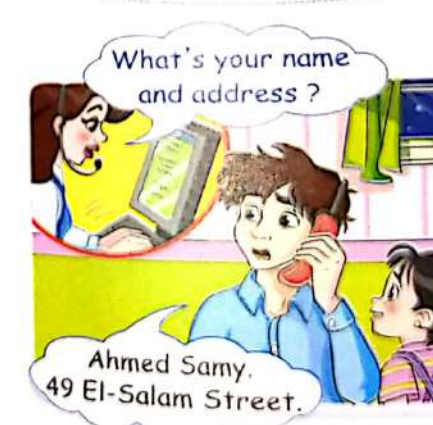
Language Functions



- 1
- للسؤال عن حالة الطوارئ نستخدم :
- What's the emergency ?
 - ما هي حالة الطوارئ ؟
 - عند طلب النجدة / المساعدة نستخدم :
- Help!
 - النجدة!



- 2
- عند التعبير عن الرأي وعدم التأكد نستخدم :
- I think
- أعتقد



- 3
- عند سؤال شخص ما عن اسمه نستخدم :
- What's your name ?
 - ما اسمك؟
 - عند سؤال شخص ما عن عنوانه نستخدم :
- What's your address ?
 - ما عنوانك ؟

4

• عند الإستفسار عما إذا كان الشخص موجوداً في المنزل تستخدم :

- Are home ?
- Are your parents home ?
- هل والديك بالمنزل ؟



5

• عند طلب النصيحة نستخدم :

- What should I do ?
- ماذا ينبغي أن أفعل ؟
- عند إعطاء النصيحة أو الأوامر أو التعليمات نستخدم الفعل في المصدر في بداية الجملة.
- Stay calm.
- ابقى هادئ.



6

• للإعتذار نستخدم :

- Sorry.
- آسف
- عند الاندهاش من شيء نستخدم :
- Oh!



Exercise on Language Functions

• SB Listen and complete : استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل :
نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

Operator : 122. What's the emergency ?

Adel : Help! There's something in my (1)

Operator : (2) is it ?

Adel : I think it is a (3) animal.

Operator : What's your (4) and address ?

Adel : Adel Fawzy. 51 Ahmed Samy Street.

B Role-play the conversation.

قم بلعبة تبادل الأدوار مع زملائك للمحادثة السابقة.

A week is enough



الامتحان بين يديك
مراجعة المنهج بالكامل والتمكن
منه في أسبوع واحد فقط
في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

General Exercises

Conversation Time

1 Listen and circle : استمع إلى معلمك و ضع دائرة .

1. a. Don't give up.

b. Stay calm.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

(المنيا ٢٠١٧)

2. a. I think there is a wild animal in my garden.

b. A wild dog is sleeping under a tree.

(الدقهلية - السنبلابون ٢٠١٨)

3. a. What's your name and address?

b. Is this your name and address?

4. a. Are your parents home?

b. Where are your parents?

(كفر الشيخ - سيدى سالم ٢٠١٨)

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We can call the police when there is a /an

a. pleasure b. officer c. emergency d. TV

2. I'm care of my little brother.

a. take b. taking c. to take d. took

(القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠١٨)

3. something on my desk.

a. There b. There're c. There's d. Is there

4. your name and address ?

a. Who's b. What's c. Whose d. When's

(مطروح ٢٠١٦)

5. The is a wild animal.

a. lion b. dog c. cat d. camel

(سوهاج ٢٠١٥)

6. I think, it's a wild animal. I can see eyes.

a. his b. her c. their d. its

(جنوب سيناء - الطور ٢٠١٨)

7. Sorry, officer. I'll my dog.

a. make b. take c. do d. leave

8. **SB** Ahmed at 44 El-Salam Street.

a. lives b. visits c. thinks d. sends

(القاهرة - الشراية ٢٠١٨ / كفر الشيخ ٢٠١٧)

General Exercises

3 Read the passage and answer the questions :

Ahmed Samy lives at 49 El-Salam Street. One day, he was at home with his little sister, Mona. Their parents went shopping. Ahmed saw something in the garden. He thought it was a wild animal. He called the emergency. The woman, the operator, told him to stay calm. She sent an officer. The wild animal was Mona's cat. She took it and thanked the officer.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There was a in the garden.

a. dog b. tiger c. cat d. lion

2. The woman sent

a. a doctor b. an officer c. a teacher d. an engineer

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Where does Ahmed Samy live?

4. Who thanked the officer?

(المنيا ٢٠١٧)

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

1. name - What's - address - your - and ?

(أسبوط ٢٠١٦ - كفر الشيخ / الدقهلية ٢٠١٧ - القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠١٨)

2. Ahmed - The woman - stay - to - told - calm.

(الغربية ٢٠١٧)

5 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. I can t see the cat's eyes

2. I like my teacher of english, Mr mohamed.

Word Time

SB page 8 WB page 8



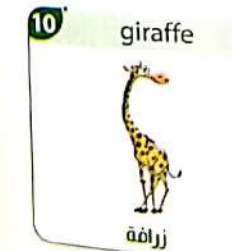
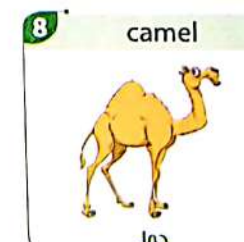
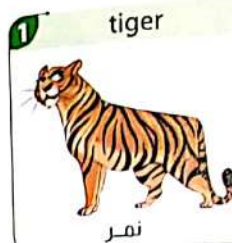
Word Time

A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد

Key Vocabulary

Animals and birds الحيوانات و الطيور



Unit 7

Vocabulary

maybe	ربما	sunscreen	كريم واقٍ من أشعة الشمس
bathroom	حمام	leaves	أوراق الشجر
tonight	الليلة	dad	أب

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs		أفعال منتظمة		Irregular Verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
want	يريد	wanted		think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	
rain	تمطر	rained		put	يضع	put	
				get	يحصل على	got	
				forget	ينسى	forgot	
				fly	يطير	flew	
				wear	يرتدي	wore	

Adjectives

صفات

fast	سريع	slow	بطيء
big	كبير (الحجم)	small	صغير (الحجم)

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

1. Do you think it's going to rain ?	١. هل تعتقد أنها سوف تمطر ؟
2. It's getting cloudy.	٢. إنها تصبح ملبدة بالغيوم.
3. Let's go inside.	٣. هيا بنا نذهب للداخل.
4. put on make-up	٤. تضع مكياج
5. take a nap	٥. يأخذ غفوة
6. get a sunburn	٦. يصاب بحروق من أشعة الشمس
7. go out	٧. يذهب للخارج
8. wear a sunscreen	٨. يضع كريم واقٍ من أشعة الشمس

Point and say the words.

أشركي الكلمات السابقة على الصورة واذكريها.

Word Time

Listen and point.

استمع وأشير

Son : Dad, do you think it's going to rain ?

Father : Maybe. It's getting cloudy. Let's go inside.

Son : Aw. I don't want to go inside.



Daughter : Mum, where's Sarah?

Mother : She's in the bathroom. She's putting on make-up.

Daughter : Is she going out tonight?

Mother : Yes, she is.



Friend : What did you do on Friday?

Mona : I went to the beach with my dad. I got a sunburn.

Friend : Did you wear any sunscreen?

Mona : No. I forgot.



STRUCTURE

WB page 8

Comparative :

المقارنة بين اثنين

عند المقارنة بين اثنين أحدهما يزيد عن الآخر في نفس الصفة القصيرة ذات مقطع واحد نستخدم :

(adj + er) + than

- The eagle is faster than the parrot.

- The kangaroo is slower than the deer.

General Exercises

Word Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She was tired. She was taking a

(الأسكندرية - الجمر ١٨ / ٢٠ / الشرقية ١٧)

- a. nap b. match c. prize d. homework

2. fly in the sky.

(كفر الشيخ - سيدى سالم ١٨ / ٢٠)

- a. Parrots b. Lions c. Bears d. Camels

3. I went to the beach and got a

- a. sun b. rise c. sunburn d. sunrise

4. The is a wild animal.

(الأقصر ١٩ / ٢٠)

- a. parrot b. cat c. tiger d. dog

5. Do you think it's going to ?

- a. rained b. rains c. raining d. rain

6. The eagle is than the parrot.

(القاهرة - المطرية ١٨ / ٢٠ / المنوفية ١٧ / ٢٠)

- a. fast b. faster c. fastest d. as fast

7. It's raining. Let's inside.

- a. went b. going c. go d. goes

8. Mona is on make-up.

- a. put b. putting c. puts d. to put

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. lion - deer - sunscreen - tiger (.....) (بنى سويف - بيا ١٨ / ٢٠ / الفيوم ١٧ / ٢٠)

2. bigger - dad - faster - older (.....) (سوهاج ١٨ / ٢٠)

3. sunburn - three - four - five (.....) (القاهرة ١٦ / ٢٠)

4. daughter - son - father - rain (.....)

5. zoo - cloudy - beach - bathroom (.....)

Word Time

3 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. **SB** sunscreen - wear - **Did** - you - any?

(القاهرة - عين شمس ١٨ / ٢٠)

2. is - the - than - deer - **The camel** - bigger.

(كفر الشيخ ١٨ / ٢٠)

4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

جواب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Zoo animals"



Spotlight

راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالي

أهم المفردات اللغوية التي وردت في درس الـ (WORD TIME)

tiger	نمر	parrot	ببغاء
eagle	نسر	deer	غزال
panda	دب الباندا	camel	جمل
bear	دب	lion	أسد
kangaroo	حيوان الكنغر	giraffe	زرافة



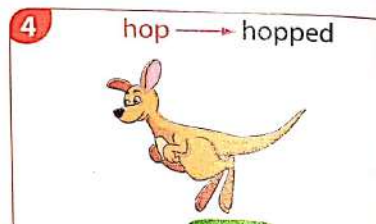
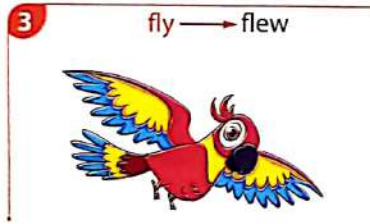
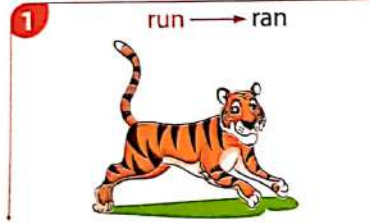
Focus & Practice Time

SB pages 9&10 WB pages 9&10

Focus Time

A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.



Vocabulary

wash the car	يغسل السيارة	→	washing the car
put on make-up	تضع مكياج	→	putting on make-up
talk on the phone	يتكلم في الهاتف	→	talking on the phone
take a nap	يأخذ قيلولة (غفوة)	→	taking a nap
take out the rubbish	يُخرج القمامة	→	taking out the rubbish
climb a tree	يتسلق شجرة	→	climbing a tree
read a newspaper	يقرأ الجريدة	→	reading a newspaper
feed the birds	يطعم الطيور	→	feeding the birds
chop vegetables	يقطع الخضراوات	→	chopping vegetables
watch TV	يشاهد التلفزيون	→	watching TV

Focus Time

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs	أفعال منتظمة	Irregular Verbs	أفعال غير منتظمة
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
walk by	يمر بجوار	walked by	fly يطير
hop	يقفز على قدم واحدة	hopped	put يضع
talk	يتحدث	talked	take يأخذ
climb	يتسلق	climbed	read يقرأ
wash	يغسل	washed	feed يُطعم
chop	يقطع	chopped	buy يشتري
			flew
			put
			took
			read
			fed
			bought

B Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

What were you doing when the camel walked by?
was he

We were washing the car when the camel walked by.
He was

LANGUAGE FOCUS

1. THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE الزمن الماضي البسيط

Formation : التكوين

He / She / It اسم مفرد + التصريف الثاني للفعل

I / We / You / They اسم جمع + التصريف الثاني للفعل

wash → washed buy → bought

Usage : الاستخدام

يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث بدأ و انتهى في الماضي :

- I bought groceries with my mum yesterday.

Key words : الكلمات الدالة على الزمن :

من الكلمات الدالة على زمن الماضي البسيط.

- yesterday أمس
- منذ (فترة زمنية) ago
- last (week - month....) الماضي (الأسبوع - الشهر)
- in + 2000 (سنة ماضية)
- in the past في الماضي

1 Affirmative Statements : الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

A Regular Verbs : الأفعال المنتظمة :

معظم الأفعال المنتظمة يضاف إليها (ed) :

look → looked watch → watched

الأفعال التي تنتهي بحرف ساكن مسبق بحرف متحرك يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير ثم يضاف إلى الفعل (ed) :

chop → chopped

الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ (e) يضاف إليها (d) فقط :

close → closed bake → baked

الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن تحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إلى الفعل (ied) :

study → studied

الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ (y) قبلها حرف متحرك (a - e - i - o - u) يضاف إليها (ed) :

play → played

- Soha played tennis yesterday.

B Irregular Verbs : الأفعال غير المنتظمة :

الفعل غير المنتظم ليس له قاعدة ولكن يحفظ كما هو :

go → went feed → fed

- We went to Luxor last week.

2 Negative Statements : الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

تكملة الجملة + مصدر الفعل inf. + didn't + فاعل Subject

- I didn't go to school yesterday.

3 Interrogative : صيغة الاستفهام :

عند تكوين السؤال بمعنى «هل ... ؟» في زمن الماضي البسيط نستخدم :

الأسئلة بـ «هل ... ؟» Yes / No Questions

Did + I - he - she - it - you - they - we + (cook breakfast) ?

Short answers الإجابات المختصرة

Yes, did. عند الإثبات
No, didn't. عند النفي

ex. Did you go to cinema last week ?

- Yes, I did.

- No, I didn't.

★ لاحظ أن عند السؤال بـ «هل ... ؟» باستخدام (Did) يكون الفعل في المصدر (inf.).

★ عند تكوين السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام (Question word) في زمن الماضي البسيط :

Wh-questions in the Past Simple Tense :

★ صيغة الاستفهام باستخدام أداة الاستفهام (Question word) في زمن الماضي البسيط :

Question word + did + he / she / it + inf. ?
you / we / they

ex. When did he go back home ?

2. THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE زمن الماضي المستمر

Formation : التكوين :

اسم مفرد I / He / She / It + was + مصدر الفعل inf.
اسم جمع We / They / You + were

Unit 7

Usage : الاستخدام

نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر لكي نعبّر عن حدث كان مستمراً في وقت معين في الماضي عندما قطعه حدث آخر.
نستخدم (when) بمعنى (عندما) لربط الحدثين معاً.

Past continuous ماضي مستمر

Long action الحدث الطويل المستمر

They were doing laundry

He was watching TV

when
عندما

Past simple ماضي بسيط

Short action الحدث القصير

the panda walked by.

- They were feeding the birds when the lion walked by.

Wh-questions : صيغة السؤال باستخدام أداة الاستفهام

What + were was + فاعل + (inf. + ing) + when + فاعل + ثانياً للفاعل ؟

تستخدم هذه الصيغة للسؤال عما كان يفعله شخص ما عندما قطعه حدث آخر.

What were you doing when the deer ran by ?

I was talking on the phone when the deer ran by.

Exercise

on Language Focus

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What were you when the camel walked by ? (السويس ٢٠١٧)

a. do b. doing c. did d. does

2. He was the car when the camel walked by.

a. wash b. washes c. washed d. washing

(القاهرة - حلوان ٢٠١٨)

3. We to Luxor last week.

a. go b. went c. goes d. going

Practice Time

4. What he doing when the eagle flew by ?
a. were b. was c. is d. are

5. Why she absent yesterday ?
a. do b. does c. was d. has
(الوادي الجديد - الداخلة ٢٠١٨)

6. She was talking the phone.
a. in b. from c. on d. at

7. We were the birds when Ali came in.
a. feeding b. fed c. feed d. feeds

8. He was taking a nap when the camel ran
a. about b. by c. from d. out

Look at page (8). Listen and point.

انظر إلى صفحة (٨) في كتاب الطالب ثم استمع وأشر.

Practice Time

Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

- What were you doing when the bear walked by ?

- I was chopping vegetables when the bear walked by.

What were you doing when the deer ran by ?

I was talking on the phone when the deer ran by.

you / deer / run ?
talk on the phone



What was ?

2 He was taking a nap when the panda walked by.

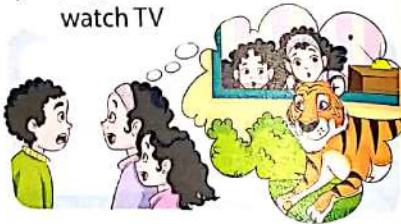
he / panda / walk ?
take a nap



What were you doing when the tiger ran by ?

3

you / tiger / run ?
watch TV



What was she doing when the kangaroo hopped by ?

4 the rubbish
when the kangaroo hopped by.

she / kangaroo / hop ?
take out the rubbish



What were they doing when the lion walked by ?

5

they / lion / walk ?
feed the birds



What was he doing

6 He was reading a newspaper when the parrot flew by.

he / parrot / fly ?
read a newspaper



What was it doing

7 It was climbing a tree when the eagle flew by.

it / eagle / fly ?
climb a tree



What was he doing when the camel walked by ?

8 He was washing the car when

he / camel / walk ?
wash the car



B Look at page (8). Practise with a partner.

انظر إلى الصورة صفحة (٨) في كتاب الطالب ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

General Exercises

Focus Time & Practice Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- What you doing when the phone rang?
a. is b. are c. was d. were (القريبة - غرب طنطا ٢٠١٨)
- Salma was vegetables.
a. driving b. riding c. chopping d. feeding (الجيزة - المنوفية ٢٠١٧)
- We were washing the car the camel walked by.
a. where b. what c. when d. who (الوادي الجديد ٢٠١٦)
- I can a newspaper.
a. look b. read c. wash d. eat (الفيوم ٢٠١٦ - القاهرة ٢٠١٧)
- I doing my homework when my father came.
a. have b. was c. were d. are
- Mohamed was the laundry.
a. doing b. making c. riding d. driving
- My father was taking the rubbish when the parrot flew by.
a. out b. on c. from d. to
- Hany a tree yesterday.
a. climbed b. ate c. flew d. played

2 SB Read the passage and answer the questions:

Look! These wild animals escaped from the zoo. They were in town, but the people didn't see them. The people were busy talking on the phone, reading a newspaper and watching TV. Ahmed was washing the car when a camel, tiger and lion walked by. A deer, bear and panda were near Kareem's house. An eagle was flying above the cat and a kangaroo was behind Mona and Sarah. A panda was walking by Mr Ali, but he was sleeping.

General Exercises

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The people didn't the wild animals.
a. see b. walk c. wash d. read
- The kangaroo was Mona and Sarah.
a. near b. under c. on d. behind

B. Answer the following questions:

- What was Ahmed doing when the lion walked by?
- Which animal was flying?

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- parrot - deer - lion - tiger (الشرقية - ديرب نجم ٢٠١٨)
- Which - When - Do - Where (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠١٨)
- ran - nine - hopped - walked (القليوبية ٢٠١٦)
- in - out - nap - from
- reading - walking - deer - flying

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

- you - Where - were - afternoon - yesterday?
(القليوبية - بنها ٢٠١٨ / الجيزة ٢٠١٧)
- flew by - I - was - when - taking a nap - the parrot.

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

- last thursday, Rania went to the cinema.
(الإسماعيلية ٢٠١٦)
- Do you like english, Adel



Reading & Your Time

SB pages 11&12 WB pages 11&12

Key Vocabulary

giant	عملاق
adult	بالغ
bamboo	خيزران / خشب البامبو
endangered	معرض للخطر (لانتقراض)
hibernate	يدخل في بيات شتوي
alive	حي / على قيد الحياة

Active Vocabulary

panda	دب الباندا
year	سنة
some	بعض
usually	عادة
because	لأن
around	حوالي / تقريباً
ounce = 28 grams	أوقية / أونصة (وحدة وزن)
fact	حقيقة
was born	وُلد
month	شهر
today	اليوم
gram	جرام
daily	يوميًا / يومي
mountain	جبل
black bear	الدب الأسود
pound = 0.45 kg	رطل
welcome to ...	مرحبًا بكم في ...
weigh	يزن
winter	فصل الشتاء
everything	كل شيء
China	الصين

لاحظ

- النطق الصوتي لحرف (g) ينطق مثل صوت /dʒ/ أي ينطق قبله حرف الـ (d) مخفف في الكلمات التالية : (endangered - giant)
- تستخدم كلمة (alive) كصفة بمعنى (على قيد الحياة).

لاحظ

- تستخدم (pound) بمعنى (جنيه) وتستخدم كوحدة قياس أوزان بمعنى (رطل).
 - حرفي (gh) في كلمة (weigh) صامتًا (silent) لا ينطقان.
 - تستخدم (for) بمعنى (لمدة) ويأتي بعدها فتره زمنية كاملة :
 - يستخدم حرف الجر (in) قبل الشهور وفصول السنة والأماكن الكبيرة.
- They eat for 12 to 16 hours daily.
- in (the) winter
- in the mountains

Reading Time

Reading Time

A Listen and read along.

استمع واقرأ.

Welcome to Cairo Zoo's Giant Panda Home!

SB page 11

Introduction : مقدمة

"Welcome to Cairo Zoo's Giant Panda Home!" is an information sign about the giant pandas and some facts about them. «مرحبًا بكم في موطن الباندا العملاقة بحديقة حيوان القاهرة» هي لافتة معلومات عن الباندا العملاقة وبعض الحقائق عنها.

Main Points : النقاط الرئيسية

- When giant pandas are born, they weigh 80 to 140 grams. ١. عندما تولد دب الباندا العملاقة، يبلغ وزنها ما بين ٨٠ إلى ١٤٠ جرام.
- Adults usually weigh 80 to 125 kilos. ٢. يتراوح وزن البالغين بين ٨٠ إلى ١٢٥ كيلو.
- Giant pandas eat bamboo. ٣. تأكل دب الباندا العملاقة نبات البامبو.
- They don't hibernate in the winter. ٤. لا تدخل في بيات شتوي.

Welcome to Cairo Zoo's Giant Panda Home!

Bob and Lili are our giant⁽¹⁾ pandas. Bob is 15 years old. Lili is 20 years old. Here are some facts⁽²⁾ about giant pandas :

- When giant pandas are born, they weigh⁽³⁾ 80 to 140 grams⁽⁴⁾. Adults⁽⁵⁾ usually weigh 80 to 125 kilos.
- Giant pandas eat bamboo. They don't hibernate⁽⁶⁾ in the winter because they have to eat 8 to 16 kilos of bamboo⁽⁷⁾ every day. They eat for 12 to 16 hours daily.
- Giant pandas walk and run on all four legs. They can climb trees and swim.
- Giant pandas live in the mountains of China. They are endangered⁽⁸⁾. Around 700 to 1000 pandas are alive⁽⁹⁾ today.



Check Vocabulary

- عملاق (1)
- حقائق (2)
- تزن (3)
- جرام (4)
- البالغين (5)
- يدخل في بيات شتوي (6)
- الخيزران / خشب البامبو (7)
- معرض للخطر (لانتقراض) (8)
- حي / على قيد الحياة (9)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Pandas live in the high of China.
a. lakes b. rivers c. seas d. mountains
- Giant pandas walk and run on all four
a. legs b. arms c. wings d. tails
- Giant pandas eat
a. rice b. wood c. bamboo d. spaghetti (الأسبوط - منفلوط ١٨ ف.)
- Pandas are Around 700 to 1000 pandas are alive today.
a. careless b. careful c. endangered d. happy
- Pandas are animals.
a. small b. giant c. naughty d. light
- Pandas don't in the winter. They eat for 12 to 16 hours daily.
a. live b. hibernate c. dry d. drive (الإسكندرية - وسط الإسكندرية ١٨ ف.)
- How much do adult pandas ?
a. walk b. jump c. run d. weigh (الدقهلية ١٦ ف.)
- How many giant pandas are today ?
a. life b. alive c. a life d. live (الجيزة ١٥ ف.)

B Listen and circle True or False.

- When giant pandas are born, they weigh 80 kilos. True False
- Giant pandas walk and run on two legs. True False
- Giant pandas live in the mountains of China. True False
- Giant pandas can climb trees, but they can't swim. True False

C Read the question. Write the answer.

- How much do adult giant pandas weigh ?
Adults usually weigh 80 to 125 kilos.
- What do giant pandas eat ?
They eat bamboo.

- Why don't giant pandas hibernate ?
They don't hibernate because they have to eat 8 to 16 kilos of bamboo every day.
- How many giant pandas are alive today ?
Around 700 to 1000 pandas are alive today.

Welcome to the American Black Bear Home at the Giza Zoo! WB page 11

Introduction : مقدمة

"Welcome to the American Black Bear Home at the Giza Zoo!"
is an information sign in Giza Zoo about American black bears.

«مرحبًا بكم في موطن الدب الأمريكي الأسود بحديقة حيوان الجيزة» هي عبارة عن لافتة معلومات في حديقة حيوان الجيزة عن الدب الأمريكي الأسود.

Main Points : النقاط الرئيسية

- Baby black bears weigh from 8 to 16 ounces.
- Adults weigh 135 to 350 pounds.
- Black bears hibernate in the winter.

اقرأ النقطه Workbook كتاب المعاصر.

Your Time

A Read and write the answers. Choose words from the box.

eat a cheese sandwich iron a shirt
make dinner walk to school
watch TV bake cookies

- What were you doing when the bear walked by ?
- What were you doing when the deer ran by ?
- What were you doing when the parrot flew by ?

B Pair work. Look at the questions in A. Ask your partner and write your partner's answers.

- في ثنائيات. انظر إلى الأسئلة في (A). أسأل زميلك ثم اكتب إجاباته.
1.
 2.
 3.

C Review. Read and write the answers.

راجع. اقرأ واكتب إجابتك على الأسئلة من خلال معرفتك.

1. Do you ever feed the birds?
.....
2. What's your favourite animal? Why?
.....
3. What were you doing at 6:00 last night?
.....
4. What were you doing at 8:00 this morning?
.....



العب مع صديقك المعاصر لعبة Mo kids
لإتقان المفردات اللغوية.

متعة تعلم اللغة الانجليزية Enjoy Learning English

انزع البوستر من كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية.

General Exercises

Reading & Your Time

1 Listen and complete : استمع إلى معلمك واكمل. نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

Teacher : I am going to tell you about a famous animal.

Student : What is the (1) of that animal?

Teacher : The American black (2)

Student : What (3) it eat?

Teacher : It eats fruits.

Student : Please sir, tell me some more (4)

(الدقهلية ٢٠١٥)

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one :

1. tiger - lion - bear - hibernate (الإسكندرية - المنتزه ١٨ ٢٠) (.....)
2. window - door - desk - year (القريبة - غرب طنطا ١٨ ٢٠) (.....)
3. fall - panda - summer - spring (.....)
4. kilo - gram - fact - ounce (.....)
5. run - live - adult - weigh (.....)

3 Read the passage and answer the questions :

Bob and Lili are our giant pandas. When giant pandas are born, they weigh 80 to 140 grams. Adults usually weigh 80 to 125 kilos. Giant pandas eat bamboo. They walk and run on all four legs. They can climb trees and swim. Giant pandas live in the mountains of China. Around 700 to 1000 pandas are alive today.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Giant pandas eat
a. fish b. bamboo c. meat d. fruit
2. Giant pandas live in the of China.
a. mountains b. trees c. parks d. schools

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What are Bob and Lili ?

4. How do pandas walk and run ?

(القاهرة - حدائق القبة ١٨ / الجيزة ١٤ ٢٠١٤)

4 Write an email of SEVEN sentences :

يجب حله في نهاية الكتاب

Write an email to your friend Ali to tell him about the giant pandas.
Your name is Maher. Your email address is maher@yahoo.com.
Your friend's email address is ali@gmail.com.

To :
From :
Subject :

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

1. don't - the - **Pandas** - winter - hibernate - in.

(القاهرة - المرح ١٨ ٢٠١٤)

2. adult - much - **How** - pandas - weigh - do ?

(الشرقية ١٦ ٢٠١٦)

6 Punctuate the following :

1. I don t go to school on friday.

2. asmaa went to the giza Zoo last week.

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة

١. تعلم كيفية التعامل مع الفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني.

ادرس التعبيرات الآتية لتساعدك على كتابة جمل مرتبطة بالوحدة.

Study

Wild animals			حيوانات برية
tiger	panda	giraffe	

Verbs			افعال
fly	run	jump	
swim	walk	climb	

Adjectives			صفات
tall	fast	cool	
slow	cute	scary	

Food			طعام
bamboo	grass	meat	

- The (حيوان) is my favourite animal.
The panda is my favourite animal.
- The (حيوان) is (صفة).
The giraffe is tall.
- The (حيوان) is (صفة + er) than the (حيوان آخر).
The giraffe is taller than the tiger.
- The (حيوان) can (مصدر الفعل).
The eagle can fly.
- The (حيوان) eats (طعام).
The panda eats bamboo.
- The (حيوان) is a wild animal.
The tiger is a wild animal.

Try

بعد دراسة ما سبق حاول أن تكون جمل باستخدام التعبيرات السابقة.

The Word	Try to make a sentence
parrot	The parrot can fly.
panda	
slow	
climb	



Answer

Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences :

"Your favourite animal"

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

- live - **Pandas** - the - in - mountains.
- parents - to - cinema - **My** - went - the.

فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
1		
2	went	

٢ الجمل الأمرية

- Take** - of - little - your - care - sister.
- calm - **Stay** - ,please.

Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
1		
2		

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

- should - do - **What** - I ?
- do - giant - **What** - eat - pandas ?

كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة
1				
2				

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل ... ؟)

- you - any - **Did** - wear - sunscreen ?
- this - **Is** - animal - wild - the ?

فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة
1			
2			

El Moasser student's writing skill في نهاية كتاب الشرح

لمزيد من التدريبات

Wild animals project worksheet

ورقة بحثية عن الحيوانات البرية



Objectives الأهداف

Express what wild animals you like and what you don't like.

عبر عن الحيوانات البرية التي تحبها والتي لا تحبها.

Get started استعد

- What animals do you like most at the zoo ?

١. ماهي الحيوانات التي تحبها في حديقة الحيوان ؟



- What animals do you see for the first time ?

٢. ماهي الحيوانات التي تراها لأول مرة ؟



Project المشروع

Make a poster about animals and birds and how to treat them.

قم بعمل ملصق (بوستر) عن الحيوانات والطيور وكيفية معاملتهم.

Project resources مصادر المشروع

* <https://www.ekb.eg>

- بنك المعرفة المصري

* The internet

- الإنترنت

* Student's books of different subjects

- الكتب المدرسية للمواد المختلفة

Your Poster

الملصق الخاص بك

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتي



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

At the end of this unit, I will be able to في نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادراً على

1 I can say these words. أستطيع نطق الكلمات الآتية.

<input type="checkbox"/> tiger	<input type="checkbox"/> parrot
<input type="checkbox"/> eagle	<input type="checkbox"/> take a nap
<input type="checkbox"/> panda	<input type="checkbox"/> get a sunburn
<input type="checkbox"/> kangaroo	<input type="checkbox"/> wear a sunscreen

2 I can read and write these sentences. أستطيع قراءة وكتابة الجمل الآتية.

<input type="checkbox"/> What were you doing when the eagle flew by ?
<input type="checkbox"/> The kangaroo is slower than the deer.
<input type="checkbox"/> Did you wear any sunscreen ?
<input type="checkbox"/> Giant pandas live in the mountains of China.

Teacher's notes ملاحظات المعلم

Parent's notes ملاحظات ولي الأمر

جزء المتابعة اليومية في نهاية كتاب الشرح

لمزيد من التدريبات

Revision



هذا الجزء يساعدك على تنمية مهارات التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية
* كيفية التعامل مع السؤال الأول والثاني في ورقة الامتحان

1 Conversation Time

Operator : 122. What's the emergency⁽¹⁾ ?

Ahmed : Help! There's something in my garden !

Operator : What is it ?

Ahmed : I think I think it's a wild⁽²⁾ animal ! I can see its eyes !

Operator : What's your name and address⁽³⁾ ?

Ahmed : Ahmed Samy. 49 El-Salam Street.

Operator : Are your parents⁽⁴⁾ home ?

Ahmed : No. They went to the cinema. I'm taking care of⁽⁵⁾ my little sister. What should I do ?

Operator : Stay calm⁽⁶⁾. I'm sending an officer now.

Officer : Is this the wild animal ?

Ahmed : Sorry, officer⁽⁷⁾. I'll take him.

Hoda : Oh, my dog!

Check Vocabulary

- (1) طوارئ
- (2) متوحش/بري
- (3) عنوان
- (4) الوالدين
- (5) يعتني بـ
- (6) لبق/هادئاً
- (7) ضابط

* كيفية التعامل مع السؤال الثالث والرابع والخامس في ورقة الامتحان

2 Word Time

tiger	نمر	parrot	ببغاء
eagle	نسر	deer	غزال
panda	دب الباندا	camel	جمل
bear	دب	lion	أسد
kangaroo	حيوان الكنغر	giraffe	زرافة

3 Focus Time & Practice Time

When → Past Simple ماضى بسيط → Past Continuous ماضى مستمر

Past Continuous ماضى مستمر → when → Past Simple ماضى بسيط

الاستخدام: يعبر عن حدث كان مستمراً في وقت معين في الماضي عندما قطعته حدث آخر.

- I was playing football when a camel walked by.

- When a camel walked by, I was playing football.

4 Difficult questions in the exam paper with model answers.

الأسئلة التي قد تكون صعبة خاصة بالوحدة في الورقة الامتحانية بإجاباتها النموذجية

1 Rearrange the following sentences:

1. Do you ever feed the birds?
2. Giant pandas eat bamboo.
3. Giant pandas don't hibernate in the winter.

2 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"Pandas"

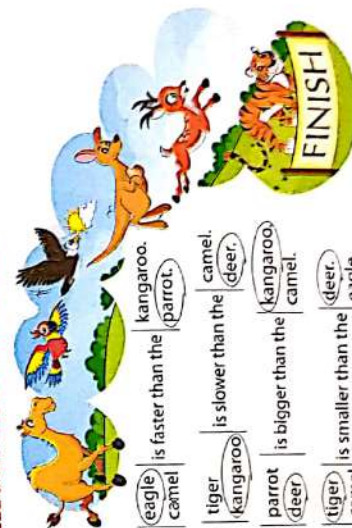
My favourite animal is the panda. Adult pandas usually weigh 80 to 125 kilos. Giant pandas walk and run on all four legs. They can climb trees and swim. Giant Pandas eat bamboo. They eat for 12 to 16 hours daily. Giant Pandas are endangered.

A. Look and write.



1. The eagle is flying.
2. The bear is eating a fish.
3. The parrot is taking a nap.
4. The lion is eating leaves.

B. Read and circle the correct words.



1. The eagle is faster than the kangaroo. camel. deer. kangaroo. camel. deer.
2. The tiger is slower than the kangaroo. camel. deer. kangaroo. camel. deer.
3. The parrot is bigger than the kangaroo. camel. deer. kangaroo. camel. deer.
4. The tiger is smaller than the kangaroo. camel. deer. kangaroo. camel. deer.

A. Write and match.

122. What's the emergency? I think ... I think it's a wild animal! I can see its eyes!

What is it? Help! There's something in my garden!

What's your name and address? Stay calm I'm sending an officer now.

What should I do? Ahmed Samy. 49 El-Salam Street.

B. Look at A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ahmed called 122 because there was something in the garden.
a. balcony b. garden c. room d. kitchen
2. Ahmed lives at 44 El-Salam Street.
a. lives b. visits c. thinks d. sends
3. The woman told Ahmed to stay.
a. nervous b. angry c. calm d. noisy
4. The woman sent an officer.
a. a teacher b. a doctor c. a nurse d. an officer

A. Read and write.

1. walk → walked
2. fly →
3. run →
4. hop →

B. Look and write.



The lion walked and the tiger ran.

The kangaroo hopped and the deer walked.

C. What were they doing when the tiger ran by? Write the letter.



1. A She was taking a nap when the tiger ran by.
2. B He was washing the car when the tiger ran by.

Write the questions and answers.



1. What was she doing when the tiger ran by?
She was buying groceries when the tiger ran by.
2. What was she doing when the deer walked by?
She was doing the laundry when the deer walked by.
- 3.
4. What were they doing when the kangaroo hopped by?
They were reading a newspaper when the kangaroo hopped by.
- 5.

A. Read and fill in the blanks.

alive eat hibernate facts weigh endangered born

Welcome to the American Black Bear Home at the Giza Zoo!

Here are some facts about American black bears:

- When black bears are born, they weigh eight to sixteen ounces. Adults weigh 135 to 350 pounds.
- Black bears eat everything: vegetables, fruits, nuts, leaves, fish, and meat.
- Black bears hibernate for five to seven months in the winter.
- Black bears are not endangered. Around 750,000 black bears are alive today.

B. Read the questions and answers.

1. How much do adult black bears weigh?
They weigh 135 to 350 pounds.
2. What do black bears eat?
3. Do black bears hibernate in the winter?
Yes, they do.
4. How many black bears are alive today?

C. Read and circle true or false.

1. Black bears are endangered. True ☐ False ☐
2. Black bears eat leaves. True ☐ False ☐
3. Baby black bears weigh 135 ounces. True ☐ False ☐
4. Black bears hibernate in the summer. True ☐ False ☐

A. Punctuate the following:

1. black bears eat everything
2. are black bears heavy

B. Write questions and answers. Use each picture once.

Answers will vary

What	When	Activity

1. What was he doing when He was?
- 2.
- 3.

Test 3

on Unit



Collected from Governorates & Directorates Examinations
اختبار على الوحدة مجمع من امتحانات المحافظات والإدارات

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

1. a. Hany Hassan, El-Salam Street.
b. Azza Hassan, 22 El-Salam Street.

نموص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

(السويس ٢٠١٤)

2. a. He was cooking lunch.
b. He was washing the car.

(الشرقية ٢٠١٥)

3. a. What's your favourite animal?
b. What's your favourite bird?

(السويس ٢٠١٧)

4. a. Did she feed the birds?
b. Did they feed the birds?

(الإسكندرية - وسط ٢٠١٨)

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل.

Officer : 122. What's the emergency?

Adel : Help! There's something in my (1)

Officer : (2) is it?

Adel : I think it's a (3) animal.

Officer : What's your (4) and address?

Adel : Adel Ahmed. 49 El-Salam Street.

(القليوبية - كفر شكر ٢٠١٩)

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some wild animals escaped from the

- a. house b. zoo c. computer d. museum

(جنوب سيناء - الطور ٢٠١٨)

2. The helps people who have emergencies.

- a. teacher b. officer c. farmer d. baker

(سوهاج ٢٠١٥)

3. Hani was the car when the lion ran by.

- a. wash b. washing c. washes d. washed

(أسيوط ٢٠١٦)

Tests on Unit 7

4. How many giant pandas are today ?
a. life b. alive c. a life d. live

(الشرقية ٢٠١٤)

5. When did she there ?
a. went b. goes c. going d. go

(دمياط ٢٠١٥)

6. She was tired. She was taking a
a. nap b. prize c. match d. homework

(المنوفية - شبن الكوم ٢٠١٨)

7. What was he doing the tiger ran by ?
a. how b. when c. why d. whom

(الدقهلية ٢٠١٦)

8. My sister to Luxor last month.
a. goes b. went c. going d. is going

(السويس ٢٠١٤)

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. panda - shorter - bigger - smaller (الفيوم - اطسا ٢٠١٨)
2. deer - horse - table - lion (الجيزة ٢٠١٧)
3. Sunday - May - Tuesday - Wednesday (كفر الشيخ ٢٠١٩)
4. woman - man - big - girl (سوهاج ٢٠١٨)
5. year - day - computer - week (المنوفية ٢٠١٤)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Ahmed is at home. He is taking care of his little sister. His parents are at the cinema. He sees something in the garden of the house. He thinks it is a wild animal. He is afraid. He calls the emergency. Soon, an officer comes and finds the animal in the garden. It is Ahmed's sister's dog. Ahmed thanks the officer for his help.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed is at
a. the cinema b. the theatre c. home d. school
2. The animal is a
a. dog b. cat c. deer d. bear

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where are Ahmed's parents ?

4. Who is Ahmed taking care of ?

C Writing

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences :

"Black Bears"


 يباب منه في نهاية الكتاب

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. something - garden - in - There's - my .

(الشرقية ٢٠١٦)

2. emergency - is - What - the ?

(الإسماعيلية ٢٠١٧)

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Nabil, there s something in my garden

(المنيا ٢٠١٥)

2. did Omar go to Alexandria by himself

(السيوط ٢٠١٧)


 يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه
 تنويه

A Listening

 1 **SB Listen and circle:** استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة. نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب
 1. a. My favourite food is cheese.
 b. The panda's favourite food is bamboo.

 2. a. No, they went to the cinema.
 b. No, they went to the zoo.

 3. a. How many giant pandas are alive today?
 b. How many adult pandas are alive today?

 4. a. What was she doing when the panda walked by?
 b. What were you doing when the panda walked by?

 2 **Listen and complete:** استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل.

Ramy : Where did you go yesterday?

Mona : I went to the (1)

Ramy : How (2) you go there?

Mona : On (3)

Ramy : What did you (4) there?

Mona : I saw a lot of animals.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Giant pandas don't in the winter.

a. sleep b. hibernate c. run d. live

2. He was out the rubbish.

a. taking b. making c. looking d. talking

3. I was groceries when the parrot flew by.

a. feeding b. hitting c. buying d. ironing

4. Giant pandas can climb trees and

a. swam b. swim c. swimming d. swims

5. do adult pandas weigh ?

a. How b. How often c. How many d. How much

6. Sara was the laundry when I came.
a. doing b. does c. do d. did
7. Giant pandas live in the of China.
a. lakes b. rivers c. mountains d. canals
8. My mother always takes care us.
a. an b. out c. of d. from

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. **SB** took - watched - book - fed (.....)
2. cinema - bank - walk - school (.....)
3. fast - short - parrot - thin (.....)
4. rubbish - panda - deer - lion (.....)
5. go - run - animal - talk (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Giraffes usually live in Africa. Adult giraffes are about 6 metres tall. They have very long necks and they are able to eat high up from the trees because they are so tall. They can see over the trees around them. They have to look out for lions because they are very dangerous. Lions like to eat baby giraffes. When a lion comes near, a mother giraffe protects her baby giraffe.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Lions like to eat giraffes.
a. baby b. adult c. child d. small
2. Giraffes usually have very necks.
a. short b. long c. far d. much

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where do giraffes live ?
.....
4. What does a mother giraffe do when a lion comes near ?
.....

(الغريبة - قطور ١٨ ٢٠)

C Writing

6 Write an email of SEVEN sentences:



Write an email to your friend Ahmed to tell him about zoo animals escape. Your name is Amir. Your email address is amir@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ahmed@gmail.com.

To :
From :
Subject :

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. **SB** eat - Giant - bamboo - pandas.
.....
2. **WB** black - hibernate - Do - bears - the winter - in ?
.....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what will Nadia do next Saturday
.....
2. It s osman's car.
.....

Quiz

on Units

6 & 7

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (٦ و ٧)

يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (A) أو (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات.

Model A

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one :

1. loudly - well - good - slowly
2. tiger - camel - eagle - kangaroo
3. kilo - gram - game - pound
4. camel - feed - chop - take

(.....)
(.....)
(.....)
(.....)

2 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. what is your friend s name ?

2. No it isn't a giraffe

Model B

1 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

1. last - were - you - What - doing - night ?

2. there - Put - over - it.

2 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. What should i do, Hany

2. they're at Hoda s house.

UNIT 8

In Kindergarten

في روضة الأطفال (الحضانة)



Main Book
OR
Time Saving

اختار طريقة شرح
ومناقشتك بين كتاب الشرح
أو الكراسة التفاعلية
صفحة ٣

Aims of the Unit : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

Listening/Speaking

- encourage someone to try again
تشجيع شخص ما على أن يحاول مرة أخرى في عمل شيء ما
- express past ability & inability
التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة في الماضي
- identify speakers in a conversation
التعرف على المتحدثين في المحادثة

Reading

- read a letter
قراءة خطاب

Vocabulary

- activities
تعلم المفردات الخاصة بالأنشطة

Grammar

- verb to "be" in present & past tense
استخدام فعل (يكون) في المضارع البسيط والماضي البسيط
- Can
استخدام الفعل (can)
- When clauses
استخدام جمل بـ (When)
- Affirmative & negative statements with could
الجملة المثبتة والنافية باستخدام (could)

CHECK
اختبر

• استخدم كراسة المعاصر لمهارات الكتابة بلهجة الكتاب

• وكراسة المعاصر التفاعلية لإتقان الوحدة.

* العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
* العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.
* نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

Conversation Time

SB page 13 WB page 13



Main Book
OR
Time Saving
أكثر طريقة شحرك
مكتوب بين كتابي الشرح
والجملات التفاعلية
صفحة ٢

Key Vocabulary

kindergarten	روضة أطفال
let me	دعني / اتركني
show	يُظهر / يبين
letter	حرف
board	سبورة

Active Vocabulary

front	الأمام / المقدمة
sorry	أسف
Miss	آنسة / أستاذة
okay	حسنًا
how	كيف
easy	سهل
too	جداً (أكثر من اللازم)
hard	صعب
work	عمل
please	من فضلك
homework	الواجب المدرسي
hundred	مائة
chair	كرسي
Why?	لماذا؟

Conjugation of verbs

Regular Verbs	أفعال منتظمة	Irregular Verbs	أفعال غير منتظمة
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
pass out يوزع / يسلم	passed out	come to يأتي إلى	came to
show يُظهر / يبين	showed	write يكتب	wrote
help يساعد	helped	give up يستسلم	gave up
clean ينظف	cleaned	let يسمح / يدع	let
		know يعرف	knew
		sit down يجلس	sat down

Conversation Time

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

1. I don't know how.	١. لا أعرف كيف.
2. I'm sorry.	٢. أنا أسف.
3. That's okay.	٣. لا عليك / لا بأس.
4. It's easy.	٤. إنه سهل.
5. Come on.	٥. هيا / تعال.
6. Don't give up.	٦. لا تستسلم / لا تيأس.
7. Good work.	٧. عمل جيد.
8. Clean the board, please.	٨. نظف السبورة، من فضلك.
9. Yay! / Hey!	٩. تعبير يقال عند الفرح!
10. So did I!	١٠. وأنا أيضًا!

Exercise on Vocabulary

• Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. run - cook - play - chair (القاهرة - البساتين ودار السلام ٢٠١٨)
2. What - Who - Where - they (الرسى ٢٠١٧)
3. school - zoo - show - kindergarten
4. hard - easy - work - wild
5. Judy - Hassan - Mona - Dina

In Kindergarten

• Characters شخصيات المحادثة



Miss Dina



Mona



Girl



Boy

Topic موضوع المحادثة

Today's conversation is in
Mona's classroom. Mona can't
write the letter "d" on the board.
Miss Dina is helping her write it.
محادثة اليوم في فصل منى الدراسية
لا تستطيع منى أن تكتب حرف (d) على
السبورة. الأستاذة دينا تساعدنا أن نكتبه.



Conversation Time

SB page 13 WB page 13

Main Book
OR
Time Saving
اختر طريقة شوتك
مشاركه لأن كتاب الشرح
والجمله التفاعلية
صفحة ٢

Key Vocabulary

kindergarten	روضة أطفال
let me	دعني / اتركني
show	يُظهر / يبين
letter	حرف
board	سبورة

Active Vocabulary

front	الأمام / المقدمة
sorry	أسف
Miss	آنسة / أستاذة
okay	حسنًا
how	كيف
easy	سهل
too	جدا (أكثر من اللازم)
hard	صعب
work	عمل
please	من فضلك
homework	الواجب المدرسي
hundred	مائة
chair	كرسي
Why?	لماذا؟

Conjugation of verbs

Regular Verbs		Irregular Verbs	
Present	Past	Present	Past
pass out	يوزع / يسلم	come to	يأتي إلى
show	يُظهر / يبين	write	يكتب
help	يساعد	give up	يُستسلم
clean	ينظف	let	يسمح / يدع
		know	يعرف
		sit down	يجلس

لاحظ

تستخدم كلمة (show) كفعل بمعنى (يوضح / يبين) وكاسم بمعنى عرض (مسرحي أو إذاعي أو تليفزيوني)
يستخدم حرف الجر (on) قبل كلمة board بمعنى (على) السبورة.

لاحظ

تستخدم صفة + too للتعبير عن شيء أكثر من اللازم ويأتي بعدها صفة.
It's too hard.
ينطق حرف الـ (s) مثل صوت حرف الـ (z) في كلمة (easy)

Conversation Time

Important expressions and prepositions

1. I don't know how.	١. لا أعرف كيف.
2. I'm sorry.	٢. أنا أسف.
3. That's okay.	٣. لا عليك / لا بأس.
4. It's easy.	٤. إنه سهل.
5. Come on.	٥. هيا / تعال.
6. Don't give up.	٦. لا تستسلم / لا تيأس.
7. Good work.	٧. عمل جيد.
8. Clean the board, please.	٨. نظف السبورة، من فضلك.
9. Yay! / Hey!	٩. تعبير يقال عند الفرح!
10. So did I!	١٠. وأنا أيضًا!

Exercise on Vocabulary

Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- run - cook - play - chair (القاهرة - البساتين ودار السلام ٢٠١٨)
- What - Who - Where - they (السويس ٢٠١٧)
- school - zoo - show - kindergarten
- hard - easy - work - wild
- Judy - Hassan - Mona - Dina

In Kindergarten

• Characters شخصيات المحادثة



Topic موضوع المحادثة

Today's conversation is in Mona's classroom. Mona can't write the letter "d" on the board. Miss Dina is helping her write it.
محادثة اليوم في فصل منى الدراسي
لا تستطيع منى أن تكتب حرف (d) على السبورة. الأستاذة دينا تساعدنا أن تكتبه.

Unit 8

A Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.

Miss Dina : Mona, please come to the front. Write the letter "d" on the board.

Mona : I don't know how.

Mona : I'm sorry, Miss Dina.

Miss Dina : That's okay. Let me show you how. It's easy.

Mona : No, I can't. It's too hard.

Miss Dina : Come on, Mona. Don't give up.

Mona : Hey ! I can do it.

Miss Dina : Good work, Mona. Please, sit down.

Miss Dina : Judy, please help me pass out the homework. Hassan, clean the board, please.

استاذة دينا : من فضلك تقدمي إلى الأمام يا منى. اكتبى حرف (d) على السبورة.
منى : لا أعرف كيف أكتبه.

منى : أنا آسفة يا استاذة دينا.
استاذة دينا : لا بأس. دعيني أوضح لك كيف تكتبه. إنه سهل.

منى : لا. أنا لا أستطيع. إنه صعب جدًا.
استاذة دينا : هيا يا منى. لا تستسلمي.

منى : ياه ! أستطيع كتابته.

استاذة دينا : عمل جيد منك يا منى. من فضلك اجلس.

استاذة دينا : جودي، من فضلك ساعديني في توزيع الواجب المدرسي. نظف السبورة من فضلك يا حسن.

Conversation Time

Girl : What did you get ?

Boy : I got a hundred !

Mona : Yay ! So did I !

البنيت : ما الدرجة التي حصلت عليها ؟

الولد : أنا حصلت على مائة درجة !

منى : ياه ! وأنا أيضًا !

Language Functions



- 1
 - لإعطاء تعليمات أو أوامر بفعل شيء ما نبدأ الجملة بـ :
inf. مصدر الفعل +
- Write the letter "d" on the board.
 - عند عدم معرفة شخص القيام بفعل شيء ما نستخدم :
- I don't know how.

- 2
 - عند تقديم المساعدة لشخص ما نستخدم :
inf. + مفعول + Let
- Let me show you how.





- 3
- عند التعبير عن عدم القدرة على فعل شيء ما نستخدم :
- No, I can't.
 - عند تشجيع شخص على القيام بفعل شيء ما نستخدم :
- Come on, اسم الشخص.
Don't give up.

- 4
- عند التعبير عن القدرة على القيام بفعل شيء ما نستخدم :
- I can do it.
 - لتهنئة شخص ما على أداء عمله نستخدم :
- Good work.



- 5
- تستخدم كلمة "please" بمعنى من فضلك عند الطلب المهذب.
- Clean the board, please.



- 6
- للسؤال عن الدرجات التي حصلت عليها في الامتحان نستخدم :
- What did you get ?
 - ما الدرجة التي حصلت عليها ؟
وللإجابة نستخدم :
- I got + رقم.
- I got a hundred!



Exercise on Language Functions

استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة. Listen and circle :

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- a. I'm sorry. Miss Sokkara.
b. Okay. Let me show you. (كفر الشيخ - سيدى سالم ٢٠١٨)
- a. No, I can't. It's too hard.
b. Yes, I can. It's too easy.
- a. Can you write the letter (d) on the board ?
b. Can you spell your name, please ? (الدقهلية - السبلاوين ٢٠١٨)
- a. What did they get ?
b. What did you get ? (الجيزة - الهرم ٢٠١٨)

B Role-play the conversation.

قم بلعبة تبادل الأدوار مع زملائك للمحادثة السابقة.

General Exercises

Conversation Time

1 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل.

Miss Dina : Mona, please come to the front.
Write the letter (B) on the board.

Mona : I don't (1) how. I'm sorry.

Miss Dina : (2) can't you do it ?

Mona : Because it's too hard.

Miss Dina : Let me show you how. It's easy. Don't give up.
Can you (3) it now ?

Mona : Hey! I (4) do it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **SB** the letter "d" on the board, Mona.
a. Writing b. Write c. Wrote d. Writes

2. He can't play this game. It's dangerous.

a. to b. too c. two d. no

3. Let me you how to draw a cat.

a. showed b. showing c. show d. shows

4. What did you get ? - I a hundred.

a. get b. getting c. gets d. got

5. A : Which can you write, Nada ? B : "C".

a. word b. letter c. name d. number

6. I got a hundred in the

a. exam b. chair c. kitchen d. plane

7. I can't write this word. It's too (التيوم - أبشواي ٢٠١٨)

a. easy b. hard c. simple d. big

8. Come on, Mona. Don't up.

a. give b. make c. get d. eat

(الغريبة - ٢٠١٤ - الدقهلية ٢٠١٥ - سوهاج ٢٠١٦ - السويس / الجيزة ٢٠١٧)

General Exercises

3 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences: "The English class"

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. me - out - pass - **Help** - homework - the. (القاهرة - الخليفة والمقطم ٢٠١٨)

2. get - **Did** - you - good - a - mark ? (البحر الأحمر ٢٠١٧)

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. how do Ali and Noha come to school (أسوان ٢٠١٤)

2. Miss dina shows Mona how to write letter "d" (الغربية - غرب الصلحة ٢٠١٨)



Spotlight

راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالي

أهم الجمل التي وردت في درس الـ (CONVERSATION TIME)

1. Write the letter "d" on the board.
2. Let me show you how. It's easy.
3. Come on, Mona. Don't give up.
4. Please, help me pass out the homework.
5. I got a hundred.

المعاصر لغة إنجليزية / ب / ترم ٢ (٨ : ٨)



Word Time

SB page 14

WB page 14



Word Time

A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

Key Vocabulary

Activities

أنشطة

1 say the alphabet



يقول الحروف الهجائية

2 throw a ball



يلقي / يرمي الكرة

3 blow a bubble



ينفخ فقاعة

4 count to ten



يعد حتى عشرة

5 build a sand castle



يبنى قلعة من الرمال

6 spell a word



ينتهي كلمة

7 catch a butterfly



يفسك فراشة

8 cut out a heart



يقطع أو يقص قلب (من مجلة مثلاً)

9 peel an orange



يقشر برتقالة

10 speak English



يتحدث اللغة الإنجليزية

• حرفي (ph) في كلمة
• /t/ ينطقان (alphabet)
• حرف (t) في كلمة
• صامت (sand castle)
• لا ينطق (silent)



Vocabulary

cookie
bee
haircut
behind

كعكة مطلاة
نحلة
قصّة شعر
خلف / وراء

How often ... ?
year
month
once

كم مرة ... ؟
سنة
شهر
مرة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular Verbs		Irregular Verbs	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
count يعد	counted	say يقول	said
want يريد	wanted	throw يرمى	threw
peel يقشر	peeled	blow ينفخ	blew
		cut out يقص	cut out
		build يبني	built
		spell يتهجى	spelt
		catch يمسك / يلحق بـ	caught
		speak يتكلم	spoke

Important expressions

1. Look out !
2. get a haircut

تعبيرات هامة

١. احترس !

٢. يقص شعره

B Point and say the words. أشر إلى الكلمات السابقة على الصورة وأذكرها.

C Listen and point. استمع وأشر.

Boy : What are you eating ?

Girl : A cookie. Do you want some ?

Boy : No, thanks. I'm going to eat this orange.



Girl : Look out! There's a bee behind you!

Boy : A bee ? Where ?

Girl : It's behind you.



Kareem : How often do you get a haircut ?

Girl : I get a haircut once a year. How about you ?

Kareem : I get a haircut once a month.



Language Functions

١. Offer : تقديم العرض :

هل تريد ... ؟ Do you want ... ?

- Do you want some ?
- No, thanks. I'm going to eat this orange.

٢. Asking about how many times : السؤال عن عدد المرات :

- How often do you get a haircut ?
- I get a haircut once a year.

General Exercises

Word Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- My sister can to ten. (النجوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠١٨)
a. catch b. count c. cut d. kick
- When he was young, he could a bubble and catch a butterfly. (الغريبة ٢٠١٧)
a. play b. peel c. do d. blow
- I get a once a month. (الشرقية ٢٠١٤)
a. haircut b. cut c. hair d. cut hair
- When I was little, I could a word.
a. blow b. throw c. peel d. spell
- How do you get a haircut ?
a. many b. much c. often d. long
- SB What are you ?
a. eats b. eating c. to eat d. eat
- A: Do you some cookies ? B: No, thanks.
a. want b. wants c. wanted d. to want
- Look out ! There is a bee you !
a. front b. behind c. across d. next

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- say - homework - blow - peel (أسبوط - الغنائم ٢٠١٨)
- under - between - in - red (كفر الشيخ - دسوق ٢٠١٨)
- orange - word - peach - apple (جنوب سيناء ٢٠١٧)
- What - haircut - Which - When
- February - Sunday - March - April

General Exercises

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

This is a kindergarten class. The children are only around five years old. Some of the children can spell, count and play nicely, but the others can't. Adel is counting happily and Manal can speak English. Noha can't cut out a heart. It's too hard for her. Samir can say the alphabet and Maha can blow a bubble. Ola can throw a ball. Ayman can't catch a butterfly.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Manal can English.
a. speak b. say c. write d. read
- Noha can't cut out a/an
a. heart b. paper c. bubble d. orange

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Who can count happily ?

4. What can Samir do ?

4 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"On the beach"

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. could - bubble - blow - I - a.

2. you - Can - spell - word - , Mona - this ?



Focus & Practice Time

SB pages 15&16 WB pages 15&16

Focus Time

A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد



Present		Past	Present		Past
am / is	→	was	am not / isn't	→	wasn't
are	→	were	aren't	→	weren't
can	→	could	can't	→	couldn't

Focus Time

استمع وردد

B Listen and repeat.

- When I was little, I could peel an orange.
- When I was little, I couldn't peel an orange.
- When you were little, you could peel an orange.
- When you were little, you couldn't peel an orange.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

1 "Verb to be" in the Present and Past Simple :

الفعل "to be" في زمن المضارع البسيط والماضي البسيط :

1 Affirmative statements : في الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

المضارع Present	الماضي Past
I → am ('m)	I / He / She / It → was
He / She / It → is ('s)	We / You / They → were
We / You / They → are ('re)	

Examples:

- I am happy.
- They were in Aswan a month ago.
- Mona is tall.

2 Negative statements : في الجمل الخبرية المنفية

ينفصل فعل "to be" بإضافة "not" بعد were / was / are / is / am

Examples:

- She isn't short.
- You weren't at school.

3 Interrogative : فى صيغة الاستفهام

عند السؤال باستخدام "verb to be" نقوم بتقديم (were / was / are / is / am) على فاعل الجملة ويكون السؤال بمعنى «هل».

Am / Is / Are / Was / Were + فاعل subject + ?

Examples:

- Are you happy ?
- Yes, I'm. / No, I'm not.
- Was Mona short ?
- Yes, she was. / No, she wasn't.

عند السؤال عن جزء معين فى الجملة نستخدم أداة الاستفهام المناسبة ونتبع الصيغة الآتية :

Question word + verb to be + فاعل subject + ?

Examples:

- How old are you ? - I am eleven years old.
- Where were you born ? - I was born in Tanta.

2 Ability & inability : التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة :

1 can (present) : يستطيع (فى المضارع)

تستخدم (can) للتعبير عن القدرة على فعل شئ ما فى زمن المضارع ويستخدم بعدها مصدر الفعل بدون إضافات وعند النفي نستخدم (can't).

Affirmative الإثبات

I / You / He / She
/ It / We / They

can

Negative النفي

I / You / He / She
/ It / We / They

cannot
= (can't)

- Kareem can play basketball.
- She can't write the letter "d".

2 could (past) : استطاع (فى الماضى)

تستخدم (could) للتعبير عن القدرة على فعل شئ ما فى زمن الماضى ويستخدم بعدها مصدر الفعل بدون إضافات وعند النفي نستخدم (couldn't).

Affirmative الإثبات

I / You / He / She
/ It / We / They

could

Negative النفي

I / You / He / She
/ It / We / They

could not
= (couldn't)

- He could play football.
- She couldn't play tennis.

3 When clauses : كرايب فى الجملة (When) استخدام

When + فاعل + was / were + little / young + فاعل + could / couldn't + inf. مصدر الفعل

تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن القدرة أو عدم القدرة على فعل شئ فى الماضى.

When I was young, I couldn't count to ten.



When I was little, I could jump.



Exercise on Language Focus

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali ill yesterday. (القاهرة - غرب القاهرة ٢٠١٨)
 - a. was b. is c. are d. were
2. When they young, they visited Alexandria.
 - a. were b. was c. are d. is

3. When Kareem was little, he speak English. (القاهرة - ٢٠١٦)
 a. can b. can't c. could d. is
4. When he was little, he could the alphabet.
 a. said b. say c. says d. saying
5. When she little, she could cut out a heart. (القاهرة - الشرايية ٢٠١٨)
 a. is b. was c. did d. does
6. Mona tall. (السويس ٢٠١٥)
 a. were b. are c. is d. am
7. I tried to catch a butterfly, but I (البحيرة ٢٠١٧)
 a. can't b. couldn't c. can d. make
8. Can you sand castles? (بنى سويف ٢٠١٥)
 a. build b. built c. builds d. building

C Look at page (14). Listen and point.

انظر إلى الصورة صفحة (١٤) في كتاب الطالب ثم استمع وأشر.

When he was little, he could cut out a heart.



When she was little, she could blow a bubble.



When he was little, he could say the alphabet.



Practice Time

A Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner.

استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

When I was little, I could say the alphabet.

- 1 When we were little, we could throw a ball.

we/could/throw a ball



- 2 When you were little,

you/couldn't/cut out a heart



- 3 he couldn't spell a word.

he/couldn't/spell a word



- 4 When she was little,

she/could/speak English



Unit 8

- 5 When I was little,
I blow a bubble.



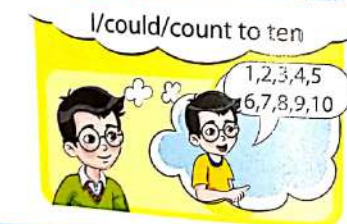
- 6 he/couldn't/catch a butterfly
.....



- 7 When he was little, he couldn't
build a sand castle.



- 8 I/could/count to ten
.....



B Look at page (14). Practise with a partner.

انظر الى الصورة صفحة (١٤) في كتاب الطالب ثم تدرب مع زميلك.



When she was little, she could build
a sand castle.



General Exercises

Focus Time & Practice Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When I was five, I peel an orange.
a. will b. can c. could d. does
(الجيزة ٢٠١٧)
- Sara can to ten.
a. catch b. count c. cut d. kick
(القاهرة ٢٠١٥)
- He's a ball.
a. throwing b. speaking c. peeling d. building
- When I was little, I couldn't a bubble.
a. count b. blow c. spell d. build
(البحيرة ٢٠١٧)
- Can you English?
a. spoke b. speaking c. speak d. speaks
(مطروح ٢٠١٤)
- When I was little, I could
a. swim b. swam c. swimming d. to swim
- When you were little, you catch a butterfly.
a. couldn't b. will c. doesn't d. isn't
(بنى سويف ٢٠١٨)
- She could cut out a
a. hard b. heart c. sand castle d. bubble

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- peel - blow - build - blue (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠١٨)
- January - May - Saturday - July (الإسكندرية ٢٠١٧)
- one - two - tree - four
- tennis - volleyball - play - handball
- threw - caught - blow - spoke

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last summer, we went to Alexandria to spend our holiday there. We travelled by car. We arrived at 10 o'clock in the morning. We stayed at a hotel by the sea. Every day, we went to the beach in "Miami". We swam in the sea. I liked building sand castles. In the evening, we sometimes went to the cinema. We were very happy.

Unit 8

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- We spent our holiday in
a. Alexandria b. Cairo c. Suez d. London
- I liked building
a. houses b. sand castles c. hotels d. schools

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did you go to Alexandria ?

4. Where did you stay ?

4 Write an email of SEVEN sentences:

Write an email to your friend Nada to tell her about what you could and couldn't do when you were young. Your name is Salim and your email address is salim@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is nada@gmail.com.

To :
From :
Subject :

5 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. a - kite - Can - you - fly ?

2. bubble - a - He - blow - could.



Reading & Your Time

SB pages 17&18 WB pages 17&18

Key Vocabulary

move away	ينتقل إلى مكان جديد (يعزل)
funny	مضحك
enormous	ضخم
dear	عزيزي / عزيزتي
teacher	مدرس
photo	صورة فوتوغرافية
sandbox	صندوق الرمل
miss	يفتقد

Active Vocabulary

sad	حزين
very	جدا
house	منزل
lunch	وجبة الغداء
class	فصل
some	بعض
story	قصة
too	أيضا
little	صغير السن
sand	رمال
castle	قلعة
soon	قريبا
break	فسحة / استراحة
never	أبدا
make friends	يكون صداقات
remember	يتذكر
get out	يخرج
new	جديد
first grade	الصف الاول

لاحظ

- * تستخدم (move) بمعنى (يتحرك)
- وتستخدم (move away) بمعنى (ينتقل إلى مكان جديد).
- * حرفي (ph) في كلمة (photo) ينطقان مثل صوت حرف (f).

لاحظ

- * تستخدم كلمة (class) بمعنى (فصل) لتشير إلى مجموعة من التلاميذ في فصل واحد وتستخدم أيضا بمعنى (حصه/درس) أما (حجرة الدراسة) تسمى (classroom)
- * تستخدم (make) بمعنى يصنع وتستخدم مع كلمة (friends) بمعنى (يكون صداقات)
- * تستخدم (break) كفعل بمعنى (يكسر) وتستخدم كاسم بمعنى (استراحة) وتسبق بحرف الجر (at)
- في استراحة - at break

Conjugation of verbs

تعريف الأفعال

Irregular Verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
tell يخبر	told	say يقول	said
see يرى	saw	write يكتب	wrote

Important expressions and prepositions

1. We miss you very much.	١. نحن نفتقدك كثيرًا (نشأتك إليك).
2. With my best wishes.	٢. مع أطيب الأمنيات.
3. Do you remember ?	٣. هل تتذكر ؟
4. Are you making a lot of friends ?	٤. هل تُكوّن الكثير من الصداقات ؟
5. Please, write soon !	٥. من فضلك اكتب الرد قريبًا !

New places

أماكن جديدة

Oxford

مدينة أكسفورد بإنجلترا

Manchester

مدينة مانشستر بإنجلترا

Reading Time

Dear Adam

SB page 17

Introduction : مقدمة

"Dear Adam" is a letter from Kareem. He wrote it to tell Adam about their days in the kindergarten class.

عزيزي آدم هو خطاب من كريم. كتبه لكي يخبر آدم عن أيامهم في فصل الحضانة.

Main Points : النقاط الرئيسية

1. Kareem wrote Adam a letter. كتب كريم خطاب لآدم.
2. Adam moved to Oxford. انتقل كريم إلى مدينة أكسفورد.
3. Mona and Kareem went to Miss Dina's house for lunch. ذهبنا مني وكريم لمنزل الأستاذة دينا لتناول وجبة الغداء.
4. Adam could build enormous sand castles. استطاع آدم أن يبني قلاع من الرمال ضخمة.

A Listen and read along.

استمع واقرأ.



Dear Adam,
How are you ? When you moved away⁽¹⁾, we were sad. We miss you very much. Do you miss us ?

Last Saturday, we saw Miss Dina. She was our kindergarten⁽²⁾ teacher. Do you remember⁽³⁾ her ? Mona and I went to her house for lunch. She showed us old photos of our kindergarten class. She told some funny stories, too. She said when you were little, you could build enormous⁽⁴⁾ sand castles. When you were in the sandbox at break, you never wanted to get out⁽⁵⁾. Remember ?

Do you like Oxford ? How's your new school ? Are you making a lot of friends ? Please write soon!
Your friend,
Kareem Ahmed

Check Vocabulary

- (1) ينتقل
- (2) حضانة
- (3) يتذكر
- (4) ضخم
- (5) يخرج

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When you away, I was sad.
a. wanted b. ate c. saw d. moved
2. She us old photos of our kindergarten class.
a. showed b. went c. built d. wrote
3. Our teacher told us some stories. We laughed a lot.
(الشرقية - ديرب نجم ٢٠١٨)
a. sad b. funny c. enormous d. bad
4. Nancy built a on the beach last summer. (جنوب سيناء ٢٠١٧)
a. butterfly b. bubble c. sand castle d. ball

5. "....." is the opposite of "forget".
a. Remember b. Happy c. Sad d. Enormous
6. This sand castle is very big. It is
a. happy b. sad c. enormous d. small
7. I you very much, Hany.
a. write b. miss c. move d. take
8. I like new friends.
a. doing b. giving c. making d. going

B Listen and circle True or False.

1. Kareem and Mona saw Miss Dina on Sunday. True False
2. Miss Dina showed them funny pictures. True False
3. Adam could build enormous sand castles when he was little. True False
4. Adam lives in Ireland. True False

C Read the question. Write the answer.

1. Who is Adam ?
Adam is Kareem's friend from kindergarten.
2. Was Miss Dina Kareem and Mona's first-grade teacher ?
No, she was their kindergarten teacher.
3. What did Kareem do at Miss Dina's house ?
He ate lunch, looked at old photos and listened to stories.
4. What could Adam do when he was little ?
When Adam was little, he could build enormous sand castles.

Dear Ola WB page 17

Introduction : مقدمة

"Dear Ola" is a letter from Suzan. She wrote it to tell Ola about their kindergarten class when they were little.
عزيزتي علا هو خطاب من سوزان. كتبته لكي تخبر علا عن فصلهم في الحضنة عندما كانوا صغار السن.

Main Points : نقاط رئيسية

1. Suzan went to Miss Sahar's house for dinner last Monday.
2. Miss Sahar showed Suzan old photos.
3. Ola could build enormous sand castles.
4. Ola lives in Manchester.

اقرأ القطعة في صفحة Workbook كتاب المعاصر.

Your Time

A Listen and answer the questions.

استمع إلى الأسئلة ثم أجب عليها من خلال معرفتك.

1. When you were four, could you say the alphabet ?
2. When you were seven, could you throw a ball ?
3. When you were six, could you speak English ?
4. When you were three, could you spell a word ?
5. When you were two, could you build a sand castle ?

Unit 8

B Pair work. What could you do when you were little? What couldn't you do? Fill in your chart. Then ask your partner.

You		Your Partner	
could	couldn't	could	couldn't
1.	1.	1.	1.
2.	2.	2.	2.
3.	3.	3.	3.
4.	4.	4.	4.

C Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When I was little, I blow a bubble.
a. don't b. can c. couldn't d. can't
- In the past, I could a bike.
a. break b. blow c. ride d. look
- Last Saturday, we Dina.
a. see b. saw c. seen d. seeing
- is your school? - It is fine.
a. Who b. Where c. Why d. How

هدية كتاب
انجز البوستر (راجع منهجك بالكامل في ساعة واحدة)
داخل كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية
EL-MORASSER

Quick Look 6th
primary

General Exercises

Reading & Your Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I was sad when my aunt away yesterday.
a. move b. moves c. will move d. moved
(الشرقية ٢٠١٨)
- Jomana is a lot of friends.
a. doing b. making c. giving d. playing
(القليوبية - بنها ٢٠١٨)
- I my father when he is abroad.
a. miss b. go c. move d. walk
(الإسماعيلية ٢٠١٦)
- Children under five go to the
a. school b. market c. kindergarten d. bank
- Miss Alaa us funny stories last week.
a. tells b. told c. tell d. telling
- When you were four, you say the alphabet.
a. can b. could c. will d. can't
- I showed Nahla our old of our kindergarten class.
a. telephones b. schools c. photos d. buildings
- I went to Miss Sahar's house dinner.
a. for b. in c. from d. with

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- little - big - show - small (.....)
- Sunday - March - Monday - Friday (.....) (القاهرة ٢٠١٧)
- school - miss - library - house (.....)
- officer - doctor - story - nurse (.....)
- blow - peel - month - remember (.....)

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last Saturday, Mona and Ali visited Miss Dina. She was their kindergarten teacher. She showed them old photos of their kindergarten class. Mona could build sand castles when she was young, but Ali couldn't blow bubbles. She also told them some funny stories about their time in the kindergarten. They had a nice time at Miss Dina's house.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Miss Dina was Mona and Ali's kindergarten
a. driver b. doctor c. teacher d. officer
- Mona and Ali had a time at Miss Dina's house.
a. nice b. sad c. bad d. hard

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When did Mona and Ali visit Miss Dina ?

4. What did Miss Dina tell Mona and Ali ?

(قنا ٢٠١٤)

4 Write an email of SEVEN sentences:

Write an email to your friend Samy to tell him about your kindergarten. Your name is Khaled. Your email address is khaled@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is samy@gmail.com

To :
From :
Subject :



Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة

١. تعلم كيفية التعامل مع الفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني.
ادرس التعبيرات الآتية لتساعدك على كتابة جمل مرتبطة بالوحدة.

Study

Activities

throw a ball	spell a word
speak English	blow a bubble
count to ten	cut out a heart

أنشطة

Places

zoo	school	kindergarten
-----	--------	--------------

أماكن

Adjectives

tall	happy
short	sad

صفات

- (مكان) is / are at / in (فاعل).
They are in the kindergarten.
- (فاعل) is / are (فعل + ing).
They are playing basketball.
- (أحد الأنشطة) like / likes to (فاعل).
They like to speak English.
- (أحد الأنشطة) can (فاعل).
She can cut out a heart.
- (صفة) is / are (فاعل).
They are happy.
- (أحد الأنشطة) When I was little, I could (فاعل).
When I was little, I could count to ten.

Try

بعد دراسة ما سبق حاول أن تكون جمل باستخدام التعبيرات السابقة.

The Word	Try to make a sentence
spell a word	I can spell a word.
kindergarten
tall
ball

Answer

Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"In the Kindergarten"

Unit 8

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.
الجملة الخبرية

1. **Salma** – the – say – alphabet – could.
2. miss – **We** – much – very – you.

فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
1	could say	
2		

الجملة الأمرية

1. up, – **Don't** – Asmaa – give.
2. me – you – **Let** – show – how.

Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
1		
2		

الجملة الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. **What** – Adham – do – could ?
2. do – a – get – **How often** – you – haircut ?

كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة
1				
2				

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. **Are** – making – you – friends – a lot of ?
2. you – teacher – **Do** – remember – kindergarten – your ?

فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة
1			
2			

El Moasser student's writing skill في نهاية كتاب الشرح

لمزيد من التدريبات

The kindergarten project worksheet

ورقة بحثية عن روضة الأطفال (الحضانة)



تحدث عن روضة الأطفال (الحضانة).

Objectives الأهداف

Talk about the kindergarten.

Get started استعد

1. Do you remember your kindergarten?

١. هل تتذكر فصلك في روضة الأطفال؟



2. What fun activities were you doing in kindergarten ?

٢. ماهي الأنشطة الممتعة التي تقوم بها في روضة الأطفال ؟



Project المشروع

Make a poster about activities in the kindergarten .

قم بعمل ملصق (بوستر) عن الأنشطة الموجودة في روضة الأطفال.

Project resources مصادر المشروع

- * <https://www.ekb.eg>
- بنك المعرفة المصري
- الإنترنت
- * The internet
- * Student's books of different subjects
- الكتب المدرسية للمواد المختلفة

Your Poster

الملصق الخاص بك

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتي

If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
 قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد
 قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

At the end of this unit, I will be able to ساكون قادراً على في نهاية هذه الوحدة.

1 I can say these words. استطيع نطق الكلمات الآتية.

<input type="checkbox"/> say the alphabet	<input type="checkbox"/> spell a word
<input type="checkbox"/> throw a ball	<input type="checkbox"/> catch a butterfly
<input type="checkbox"/> blow a bubble	<input type="checkbox"/> cut out a heart
<input type="checkbox"/> count to ten	<input type="checkbox"/> peel an orange
<input type="checkbox"/> build a sand castle	<input type="checkbox"/> speak English

2 I can read and write these sentences. استطيع قراءة وكتابة الجمل الآتية.

<input type="checkbox"/> When I was little, I could build a sand castle.
<input type="checkbox"/> When she was little, she couldn't count to ten.
<input type="checkbox"/> Don't give up.
<input type="checkbox"/> I don't know how.
<input type="checkbox"/> That's okay.
<input type="checkbox"/> Pass out the homework, please.
<input type="checkbox"/> Let me show you how.
<input type="checkbox"/> I can do it.

Teacher's notes ملاحظات المعلم

Parent's notes ملاحظات ولي الأمر

جزء المتابعة اليومية في نهاية كتاب الشرح

لمزيد من التدريبات

Revision

Unit
8

هذا الجزء يساعدك على تنمية مهارات التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

1 Conversation Time

Miss Dina : Mona, please come to the front ⁽¹⁾. Write the letter "d" on the board.
 Mona : I don't know how. I'm sorry, Miss Dina.

Miss Dina : That's okay. Let me ⁽²⁾ show ⁽³⁾ you how. It's easy.
 Mona : No, I can't. It's too hard.

Miss Dina : Come on ⁽⁴⁾, Mona. Don't give up.
 Mona : Hey ! I can do it.

Miss Dina : Good work, Mona. Please sit down. Judy, please help me
 pass out ⁽⁵⁾ the homework. Hassan, clean the board, please.

Girl : What did you get ?

Boy : I got a hundred ⁽⁶⁾ !

Mona : Yay ! So did I !

Check
Vocabulary
 (1) الأمام / المقدمة
 (2) جعنى / تركنى
 (3) يوضح / يبين
 (4) هيا / تعال
 (5) يوزع / يسلم
 (6) مائة

2 Word Time

say the alphabet	ينطق الحروف الهجائية	catch a butterfly	يمسك بفرشة
throw a ball	يلقى / يرمى الكرة	cut out a heart	يقطع أو يقص قلب (من مجلة مثلاً)
blow a bubble	ينفخ فقاعة	peel an orange	يقشر برتقالة
count to ten	يعد حتى رقم عشرة	speak English	يتحدث اللغة الإنجليزية
build a sand castle	يبنى قلعة من الرمال		
spell a word	يتهجى الكلمة		

Unit 8

3 Focus Time & Practice Time

Verb to be

Present	المضارع
I	→ am
He / She / It	→ is
We / You / They	→ are

Past	الماضي
I	→ was
He / She / It	→ was
We / You / They	→ were

فعل «يكون»

- * Ahmed is ten years old.
- * She was short.

When + فاعل + was / were + little / young + فاعل + couldn't + inf. مصدر الفعل
تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن القدرة أو عدم القدرة على فعل شيء ما في الماضي.

When I was little, I couldn't count to ten.

When I was little, I could jump.



4 Difficult questions in the exam paper with model answers.

الأسئلة التي قد تكون صعبة خاصة بالوحدة في الورقة الامتحانية بإجاباتها النموذجية

* Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"Our Kindergarten"

Miss Samar was our kindergarten teacher. She showed us old photos of our kindergarten class. She told us funny stories. We love our kindergarten teacher very much. We visited her. We had dinner at home. She was very happy.

Word Time

Workbook

A. Look and write.



B. What are they doing? Look and write.



1. He's throwing a ball.
2. He's catching a butterfly.
3. He's catching a butterfly.
4. He's catching a butterfly.

Conversation Time

Workbook

A. Circle the odd word, replace it with the correct one, and then rewrite the correct sentence.



1. Mona, please come to the chair.
Mona, please come to the front.
2. Wrote the letter "d" on the board.
Write the letter "d" on the board.
3. I don't know why. I'm good, Miss Dina.

4. That's okay. Let me showed you how it's easy.
That's okay. Let me show you how. It's easy.
5. Yes, I can't. It's not hard.

6. Come one, Mona. Please give up.
Come on, Mona. Don't give up.

B. Look at A. Read and write True or False.

1. It's easy for Mona to write the letter "d". False
2. Miss Dina shows Mona how to write the letter "d". True
3. Miss Dina says it isn't easy to write the letter "d". True
4. Miss Dina wants Mona to give up.

Test 5 on Unit 8

Collected from Governorates & Directorates Examinations
اختبار على الوحدة مجمع من امتحانات المحافظات والإدارات

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

- a. We were at home.
b. We were at school.
- a. Yes, I could.
b. No, I couldn't.
- a. What could you do when you were little?
b. What could you do when you were five?
- a. Can you count to ten?
b. Could she count to ten?

نموص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

(الجيزة ٢٠١٥)

(الدقهلية - أجا ٢٠١٨)

(كفر الشيخ - دسوق ٢٠١٨)

(الغربية ٢٠١٤)

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Noha : I'm sorry, I don't know (1) to write the letter "m".

Teacher : Can (2) show you how? It is easy.

Noha : No, it's too hard.

Teacher : Come on. Don't (3) up.

Noha : Is (4) right?

Teacher : Good work, Noha.

(السويس ٢٠١٥)

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The teacher asked me to the alphabet correctly.
a. tell b. count c. say d. blow
(القليوبية - بنها ٢٠١٨)
- When he was five, he English.
a. reads b. can read c. could read d. is reading
(بنى سويف ٢٠١٥)
- Yesterday, Mona could spell a word, but Adel
a. can b. can't c. couldn't d. could
(القاهرة - حدائق القبة ٢٠١٨)

Tests on Unit 8

- Ali, please help me pass the homework. (القاهرة - عين شمس ٢٠١٨)
a. by b. at c. out d. in
- My sister can to ten. (كفر الشيخ ٢٠١٧)
a. eat b. count c. drink d. peel
- My sister say the alphabet when she was four.
(القليوبية ٢٠١٧)

- a. can b. will c. could d. may
- You couldn't count, when you were (الشرقية ٢٠١٤)
a. little b. short c. tall d. old
- Write the letter "d" on the (بنى سويف ٢٠١٥)
a. pencil b. bread c. pen d. board

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- spell - built - speak - throw (القاهرة - الشراية ٢٠١٨)
- peeled - played - visited - show (السويس ٢٠١٤)
- fat - thin - tall - shirt (الفيوم ٢٠١٧)
- train - car - school - bus (الدقهلية ٢٠١٥)
- sand castle - ten - beach - umbrella (أسوان ٢٠١٤)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Dear Samah,
When you moved away, I was sad. I miss you very much. Do you miss me? Last Sunday, I went to our old friend Heba's house for dinner. She showed me some old photos of our kindergarten class. She told me some interesting things we could do when we were little. Do you remember what you could do when you were little? You could build huge sand castles. Do you like New York? Are you making many friends?

Yours,
Asmaa

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Heba showed Asmaa some old
a. photos b. birds c. clothes d. books
- could build huge sand castles.
a. Heba b. Asmaa c. Samah d. Omnia

Unit 8

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Where does Samah live ?

4. What did Asmaa do last Sunday ?

(النسبة - بنى مزار ٢٠١٩)

C Writing

6 Write an email of SEVEN sentences :

Write an email to your friend Eman to tell her about your activities in the kindergarten. Your name is Mona and your email address is mona@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is eman@gmail.com.

To :
From :
Subject :

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. remember - our - class - Do - you - kindergarten ? (الشرقية ٢٠١٤)

2. the - , please - Clean - board. (القليوبية ٢٠١٤)

8 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. yes, Heba could count to ten (الإسكندرية ٢٠١٧)

2. what could the girl do when she was ten (كفر شكر ٢٠١٨)

Test 6 on Unit 8



تنبؤه يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتوصييه

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة. نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- a. When she was little, she could say the alphabet.
b. When she was little, she could spell a word.
- a. Adam is Kareem's friend from the kindergarten.
b. Adam is Kareem's friend from school.
- a. Who are you ?
b. How are you ?
- a. Could Ali swim when he was little ?
b. Could Hoda swim when she was little ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل. نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

Adam : Hi, how are you ?

Ahmed : I'm (1), thanks.

Adam : Last Saturday, I visited Miss Dina. Do you
(2) her ?

Ahmed : Yes, she was our (3) teacher.

Adam : (4) you write to her ?

Ahmed : Yes, I do.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I tried to catch a butterfly, but I
a. can't b. can c. couldn't d. could
- Can you this word ?
a. spelt b. spelling c. spells d. spell
- Let me show you how to out a heart.
a. build b. cut c. count d. peel

Unit 8

4. Noha a lot of friends at school.
a. made b. did c. said d. travelled
5. The teacher us prizes last year.
a. gives b. give c. gave d. giving
6. They don't blow a
a. hard b. heart c. sand castle d. bubble
7. When I was little, I could peel a/an
a. ice cream b. sand castle c. bubble d. orange
8. Kareem and Mona saw Miss Dina Sunday.
a. on b. in c. at d. from

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. kindergarten - class - school - dinner (.....)
2. red - peel - white - orange (.....)
3. SB wanted - showed - photos - moved (.....)
4. tennis - football - volleyball - sand castle (.....)
5. sorry - big - show - hard (.....)

5 SB Read the passage and answer the questions:

Hi, class! My name is Adam Abo Bakr. I'm from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last week. I had a lot of friends in Cairo. I used to walk to school with my friends five times a week.

Our school was near the Big Zoo. We could see the pandas and the deer. I love animals. My friend Mona had a puppet named Sokkara. When we were little, we sometimes went to the beach with Sokkara. I could build enormous sand castles. I like going to the beach.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Adam Abo Bakr is from
a. Alexandria b. Cairo c. Giza d. Aswan
2. Adam used to walk to school with his friends five times
a. a day b. a week c. a month d. a year

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What could Adam see at the zoo ?
.....
4. What's Mona's puppet called ?
.....

C Writing

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences: "My friend"



7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. us - Do - miss - you ?
.....

2. too - hard - is - It.
.....

8 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. reham and Dina like english.
.....
2. where did Ali go last sunday ?
.....

مراجعة على Unit 6 في ورقة واحدة

1. Conversation	2. Vocabulary	3. Language Focus
<p>Mona : Hi, Kareem! What are you doing ?</p> <p>Kareem : I'm helping Mr Khaled clean up the music room. He's getting ready for the concert.</p> <p>Mona : Can I help you ?</p> <p>Kareem : Sure. You can move the bass.</p> <p>Put it over there, by the window.</p> <p>Mona : Ugh! I can't lift it by myself.</p> <p>It's so heavy.</p> <p>Kareem : Here. I'll take it.</p> <p>Mona : Look out! There's a box behind you!</p> <p>Kareem : Ahhhh!</p> <p>Teacher : What's going on in here ?</p> <p>Kareem : We're cleaning up.</p>	<p>الألات الموسيقية</p> <p>tuba tuba (آلة نفخ موسيقية تشبه البوق)</p> <p>flute flute (آلة نفخ موسيقية)</p> <p>cymbals cymbals (آلة النفخ الموسيقية)</p> <p>drums drums (طبول)</p> <p>xylophone xylophone (كسيليفون)</p> <p>electric keyboard electric keyboard (بيانو أو أورك كويبردي)</p> <p>harp harp (آلة الهارب (قيثارة)</p> <p>cello cello (تشيلو آلة موسيقية تشبه الكمان)</p> <p>recorder recorder (مزمار خشبي آلة موسيقية تشبه الفلوت)</p> <p>trumpet trumpet (ترومبيت / بوق)</p>	<p>طرق الحال</p> <p>* Adverbs of manner</p> <p>الظرف يصف الفعل ويأتي بعده ويتكون من إضافة (ly) إلى الصفة المنتظمة.</p> <p>- He runs quickly.</p> <p>* أما الصفات غير المنتظمة لا يضاف إليها (ly) عند تحويلها إلى ظرف بل نحفظ كما هي.</p> <p>- Heba played the drums well.</p> <p>Wh-questions with How (simple past tense)</p> <p>* السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام (How ... ?)</p> <p>في زمن الماضي البسيط (السؤال عن الطريقة التي كان يؤدي بها شخص ما شيء ما في الماضي)</p> <p>How + did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ؟</p> <p>- How did she play the drums ?</p> <p>- She played the drums happily.</p>

On Units 6, 7 and 8

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات ٦، ٧، ٨

General Revision

General Revision

Mini Test on Unit 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I'm ready for the concert.
a. playing b. getting c. having d. giving
- The students at Cairo School gave their spring last night.
a. food b. flavour c. performance d. favour
- The is a musical instrument.
a. tap b. tree c. tuba d. table
- Youssef Hamdy was the on the violin.
a. teacher b. soloist c. student d. farmer
- you want some help ?
a. Do b. Has c. Are d. Have
- A : instrument can you play ?
B : The tuba.
a. Where b. When c. How d. Which
- A : How did he play the harp ?
B : He played it
a. quickly b. quicker c. quick d. quickest

8. When the performance ?

- a. did b. was c. does d. can

2 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

- did - drums - **How** - they - the - play ?
- quietly - played - cello - **She** - the.

3 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- tuba - harp - window - drum ()
- slowly - quickly - good - happily ()
- sad - happy - loud - quickly ()
- spaghetti - ice cream - salad - party ()
- spring - sing - summer - winter ()

مراجعة على Unit 7 في ورقة واحدة

1. Conversation	2. Vocabulary	3. Language Focus
Operator: 122. What's the emergency? Ahmed : Help ! There's something in my garden ! Operator: What is it ? Ahmed : I think ... I think it's a wild animal ! I can see its eyes ! Operator: What's your name and address ? Ahmed : Ahmed Samy. 49 El-Salam Street. Operator: Are your parents home ? Ahmed : No. They went to the cinema. I'm taking care of my little sister. What should I do ? Operator: Stay calm. I'm sending an officer now. Officer : Is this the wild animal ? Ahmed : Sorry, officer. I'll take him. Hoda : Oh, my dog !	Birds and animals طيور وحيوانات tiger نمر eagle نسر panda دب الباندا bear دب kangaroo حيوان الكنغر parrot بغاء deer غزال camel جمل lion أسد giraffe زرافة	١. زمن الماضي البسيط مصدر الفعل مثال إلى d ied ز ed [أر] يحتفظ الفعل غير النظم كما هو ٢. زمن الماضي المستمر We, You, They, جمع اسم جمع were + (inf. + ing). I, He, She, It, اسم مفرد was Past Continuous حدث طويل مستمر when Past Simple حدث قصير - They were doing the laundry when the camel ran by. What + were + فاعل + (inf. + ing) + when ? تصرف ثان للفعل + فاعل * What was he doing when the deer ran by ? - He was taking a nap when the deer ran by.

Mini Test on Unit 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ahmed Samy at 49 El-Salam Street.
a. visits b. lives c. thinks d. sends
- I am a nap. I'm tired.
a. making b. taking c. doing d. flying
- Giant pandas eat
a. meat b. bamboo c. leaves d. fruit
- Around 750,000 black bears are today.
a. life b. a life c. alive d. live
- were you doing when the deer ran by ?
a. When b. How c. What d. Who
- He was washing the car when the camel by.
a. walk b. walks c. walking d. walked

7. Samar vegetables yesterday.

- a. chops b. chopped c. chopping d. chop

8. My brother was talking the phone when the lion walked by.

- a. out b. on c. to d. from

2 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. do - I - What - should ?

2. pandas - Adult - 80 - to 125 - weigh - kilos.

Unit 8 في ورقة واحدة

1. Conversation	2. Vocabulary	3. Language Focus
Miss Dina: Mona, please come to the front. Write the letter "d" on the board.	الأنشطة say the alphabet ينطق الحروف الهجائية	"Verb to be" in Present and Past Tense
Mona : I don't know how.	throw a ball يلقى / يرمى الكرة	- Mona is tall.
I'm sorry, Miss Dina.	blow a bubble ينفخ فقاعة	- I am eleven years old.
Miss Dina: That's okay. Let me show you how. It's easy.	build a sand castle يبنى قلعة من الرمال	- Mona and Kareem are pupils.
Mona : No, I can't. It's too hard.	catch a butterfly يمسك فراشة	- He was in the zoo yesterday.
Miss Dina: Come on, Mona. Don't give up.	peel an orange يقشر برتقالة	- They were in the kindergarten last year.
Mona : Hey ! I can do it .	count to ten يعد حتى رقم عشرة	Affirmative and negative statements with "could & couldn't"
Miss Dina: Good work, Mona. Please, sit down.	spell a word يتهجى كلمة	- She could build sand castles.
Judy, please help me pass out the homework. Hassan, clean the board, please.	cut out a heart يقطع أو يقص قلب	- I couldn't catch a butterfly.
Girl : What did you get ?	speaking English يتحدث اللغة الإنجليزية	When clauses
Boy : I got a hundred !		When + فاعل + $\frac{\text{was}}{\text{were}}$ + little,
Mona : Yay ! So did I !		فاعل + $\frac{\text{could}}{\text{couldn't}}$ + inf. مصدر الفعل
		When I was little, I could count to ten.

Mini Test on Unit 8

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Come on, Mona. Don't up.
a. get b. make c. give d. write
- Sameh can a ball.
a. throw b. build c. count d. peel
- When you away, we were sad.
a. said b. moved c. wanted d. saw
- When he was little, he couldn't
a word.
a. build b. spell c. blow d. peel
- When I was little, I blow a bubble.
a. don't b. can c. could d. can't
- is your new school ? - It's fine.
a. Who b. Where c. Why d. How
- I tried to ride a bike, but I
a. can't b. can c. couldn't d. could

- She went to her grandfather's house dinner.
a. for b. in c. from d. with

2 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences :

"My school"                                      

UNIT 9

Cities Around the World مدن حول العالم



Main Book
OR
Time Saving
اختر طريقة شريك
ومذاكرتك بين كتاب الشرح
أو الكراسة التفاعلية
صفحة 3

Aims of the Unit : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

Listening/Speaking

- interview an airline pilot
- إجراء محادثة مع طيار خطوط جوية
- inquire about time & duration of activities in the past
- الاستفسار عن الوقت و مدة الأنشطة في زمن الماضي
- identify speakers in a conversation
- التعرف على المتحدثين في المحادثة

Reading

- read a tourist brochure
- قراءة كُتيب سياحي

Vocabulary

- cities & months

Grammar

- Wh-questions with When and How long
- تعلم كيفية تكوين السؤال بـ : (متى) و (كم المدة)

Conversation Time

SB page 19 WB page 19

Main Book
OR
Time Saving
اختر طريقة شريك
ومذاكرتك بين كتاب الشرح
أو الكراسة التفاعلية
صفحة 3

Key Vocabulary

interview	يجري مقابلة شخصية
a few	قليل من (شيء يُعد)
overseas	عبر البحار (في الخارج)
flight	رحلة جوية
female	أنثى
airline	شركة طيران / خطوط جوية
the world	العالم

Active Vocabulary

How many ... ?	كم عدد ... ؟
captain	قبطان / كابتن / قائد
copilot	مساعد طيار
newspaper	جريدة / صحيفة
pilot	طيار
one third ($\frac{1}{3}$)	ثلث ($\frac{1}{3}$)
abroad	في الخارج / خارج البلاد
ever	من قبل / دوماً
once	مرة

لاحظ

1. interview
• تستخدم كلمة (interview) كفعل بمعنى (يجري مقابلة شخصية) وكاسم بمعنى (مقابلة شخصية) :
• قليل من اسم جمع (يعد) + a few
- Could we ask you a few questions ?
2. a little + اسم لا يعد (كمية)
• قليل من (كمية)
- There is a little water in the bottle.

لاحظ

النطق الصوتي لحرف (s) في كلمة newspaper ينطق مثل حرف (z).

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs		أفعال منتظمة		Irregular Verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
work	يعمل	worked	يعمل	think	يعتقد	thought	يعتقد
interview	يجري مقابلة شخصية	interviewed	يجري مقابلة شخصية	fly	يطير	flew	يطير
ask	يسأل	asked	يسأل	drink	يشرب	drank	يشرب
thank	يشكر	thanked	يشكر				

CHECK
اختبر

• استخدم كراسة المعاصر لمهارات الكتابة بنهاية الكتاب.
• وكراسة المعاصر التفاعلية لإتقان الوحدة.

• المعلمة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
• المعلمة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.
• ونصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

Important expressions and prepositions

1. We'd like to + inf. مصدر الفعل
2. Go ahead.
3. work for
4. overseas flight
5. by yourself
6. my pleasure
7. Thanks for your time.

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة
١. نود / نريد أن
٢. نفضل ابداً.
٣. يعمل لدى / لصالح
٤. رحلة طيران للخارج
٥. بنفسك
٦. لقد سرني ذلك / إنه من دواعي سروري
٧. شكراً جزيلاً على وقتك.

Exercise

on Vocabulary

- Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. school - captain - bank - hotel (.....) (شمال سيناء، ٢٠١٧)
2. city - plane - train - taxi (.....) (منوفية ١٦ - ٢٠١٦)
3. teacher - doctor - work - pilot (.....) (سوهاج ١٥ - ٢٠١٥)
4. interview - fly - copilot - play (.....)
5. one - two - third - four (.....)

Interviewing a pilot

إجراء حوار مع طيار

Characters الشخصيات المحادثة



Topic الموضوع المحادثة

Today's conversation is an interview between Laila, Ramy and Captain Marwa. Laila and Ramy are writing for the school newspaper. They are talking with Captain Marwa about her job.

محادثة اليوم هي عبارة عن مقابلة شخصية بين ليلي ورامي وكابتن مروة. ليلي ورامي يكتبان للدراسة المدرسية ويتحدثون مع الكابتن مروة عن وظيفتها.

Conversation Time

A Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.

Laila : Captain Marwa, we'd like to interview you for our school newspaper. Could we ask you a few questions ?

Captain Marwa : Sure. Go ahead.

Laila : How many female pilots work for your airline ?

Captain Marwa : I think one third of the pilots are female.

Laila : Do you ever fly abroad ?

Captain Marwa : Yes. I have an overseas flight once a month.

Ramy : Do you fly the plane by yourself ?

Captain Marwa : No, I always have a copilot.

Ramy : Do you like being a pilot ?

Captain Marwa : Yes, very much!

Laila : Thanks for your time, captain Marwa.

Captain Marwa : My pleasure.

ليلي: نود أن نجرى معك حوار لمجلة مدرستنا يا كابتن مروة. هل يمكننا أن نسألك بعض (أشياء من) الأسئلة؟
كابتن مروة: بالتأكيد. تفضل ابداً.

ليلي: كم عدد الطيارين الإناث اللاتي يعملن في شركة الطيران الخاصة بكم؟
كابتن مروة: أعتقد أن ثلث الطيارين إناث.

ليلي: هل يوماً تسافرين جواً للخارج؟
كابتن مروة: نعم. أنا أقوم برحلة جوية للخارج مرة كل شهر.

رامي: هل تفردين الطائرة بنفسك؟
كابتن مروة: لا. أنا دائماً لدي مساعد طيار.

رامي: هل تحبين وظيفتك كطيار؟
كابتن مروة: نعم. أحبها جداً.

ليلي: شكراً جزيلاً على وقتك يا كابتن مروة.
كابتن مروة: إنه من دواعي سروري.

Language Functions



- 2
- للسؤال عن العدد نستخدم :
 - How many + اسم جمع ؟
 - كم عدد ؟
 - للتعبير عن الرأي نستخدم :
 - I think
 - أعتقد



- 3
- للسؤال عن رحلات الطيران التي يقوم بها الشخص للخارج نستخدم :
 - Do you ever fly abroad ?
 - هل دومًا تسافرين جواً للخارج ؟

- 1
- لإبداء الرغبة في القيام بعمل شيء ما نستخدم :
 - We'd like to + inf. المصدر
 - نود / نريد أن ...
 - عند الطلب بطريقة مهذبة نستخدم :
 - Could we + inf. مصدر الفعل ؟
 - هل يمكننا أن ... ؟
 - عند إبداء الموافقة نستخدم :
 - Sure. Go ahead.
 - بالتأكيد. تفضل ابدأ.



- 5
- لسؤال شخص عن حبه لعمله نستخدم :
 - Do you like being a/an الوظيفة ؟
 - هل تحب وظيفتك ك ؟
 - وللرد نستخدم :
 - نعم، أحبها جدًا.
 - Yes, very much.



- 4
- للسؤال عن طبيعة عمل الطيار نستخدم أسئلة مثل :
 - Do you fly the plane by yourself ?
 - هل تفردين الطائرة بنفسك ؟
 - نستخدم (always) للتعبير عن فعل شيء بصفة دائمة :
 - I always have a copilot.
 - دائمًا لدى مساعد طيار.



- 6
- لشكر شخص ما نستخدم :
 - Thanks for your time.
 - شكرًا على وقتك.
 - وللرد على الشكر نستخدم :
 - My pleasure.
 - إنه من دواعي سروري.

Exercises on Language Functions

1 Listen and circle : استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة

1. a. No, I like being a teacher. (بوسعيد ٢٠١٥)
 b. No, I like being a pilot.
 2. a. I think all pilots are female.
 b. I think one third of the pilots are female. (الإسماعيلية ٢٠١٧)
 3. a. Do you like being a teacher ?
 b. Do you like being a pilot ? (القاهرة - حدائق القبة ٢٠١٨)
 4. a. How long does she fly abroad ?
 b. How often does she fly abroad ? (الجيزة ٢٠١٤)

2 Listen and complete : استمع إلى معلمك واكمل

- Marwa : Good morning, I'm Captain Marwa.
 Adel : Good morning, could we (1) you for our newspaper ?
 Marwa : Sure. Go (2)
 Adel : How many female pilots work (3) your airline ?
 Marwa : I think (4) third of the pilots.
 Adel : Thank you for your time. (المنيا ٢٠١٦)

B Role-play the conversation.

قم بلعبة تبادل الأدوار مع زملائك للمحادثة السابقة.

General Exercises

Conversation Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We'd like to interview you for our school (الإسماعيلية ٢٠١٤)
 a. teacher b. street c. newspaper d. desk
 2. Could I ask you a questions ?
 a. little b. many c. few d. much (الإسماعيلية - شمال سيناء ٢٠١٧ / المنيا - كفر الشيخ ٢٠١٦)
 3. A pilot usually has an overseas once a month.
 a. fly b. flight c. chorus d. questions (بنى سرف - الفشن ٢٠١٨)
 4. How female pilots work for Egypt Airlines ?
 a. many b. much c. long d. often (القليوبية ٢٠١٦ / المنوفية ٢٠١٧)
 5. My uncle is a pilot. He works at the
 a. sea b. airport c. river d. mountain (كفر الشيخ ٢٠١٦ / الإسكندرية ٢٠١٤)
 6. Do you like a pilot ?
 a. be b. been c. being d. doing (أسوان - جنوب سيناء ٢٠١٧ / الفيوم ٢٠١٦ / شمال سيناء ٢٠١٤)
 7. Five female pilots work for our
 a. lions b. air c. copilots d. airlines (جنوب سيناء ٢٠١٤)
 8. Do you fly a plane by ? (أسوان - ادفر ٢٠١٨ / الشرقية ٢٠١٧)
 a. myself b. himself c. yourself d. itself

2 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last Wednesday, Mona interviewed captain Noura for the school newspaper. Mona asked Noura some questions. Nine pilots work for Noura's airline. One third of the pilots are females. Captain Noura sometimes flies abroad. She has an overseas flight once a month. She doesn't fly the plane by herself. She has a copilot. She likes being a pilot very much.

Unit 9

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Noura is a/an
 a. engineer b. pilot c. copilot d. doctor
2. pilots are females.
 a. Seven b. Eight c. Nine d. Three

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When did Mona interview captain Noura ?

4. Where does Noura sometimes fly ?

3 SB Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"An interview with a pilot"

جواب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. by - the plane - fly - you - yourself - Do ?

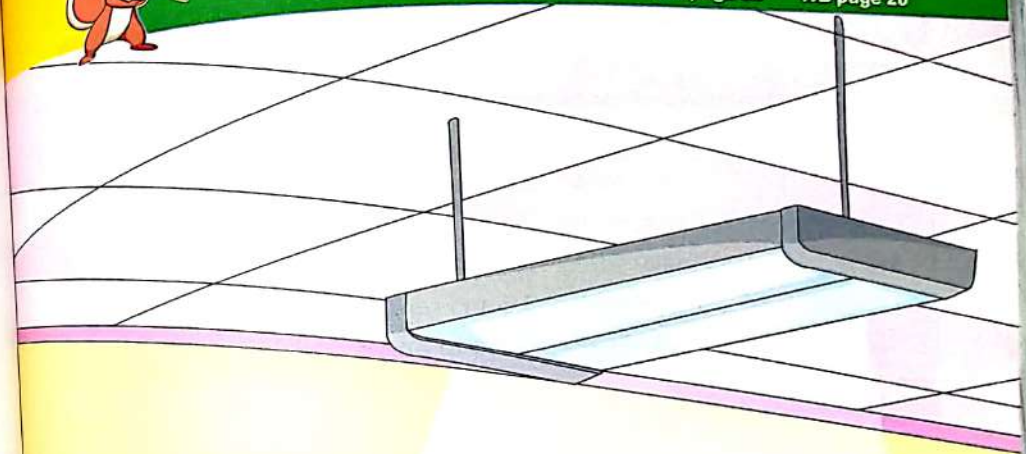
(القاهرة - الخليفة والمقطم ٢٠١٨)

2. a month - once - have - I - flight - an overseas.

(الدقهلية - أجا ٢٠١٨ / أسوط - الوادي الجديد ٢٠١٦)

Word Time

SB page 20 WB page 20



A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

Key Vocabulary

Cities		مدن	
1. Rome	مدينة روما	6. New York City	مدينة نيويورك
2. Cairo	مدينة القاهرة	7. Paris	مدينة باريس
3. Tokyo	مدينة طوكيو	8. Honolulu	مدينة هونولولو
4. London	مدينة لندن	9. San Francisco	مدينة سان فرانسيسكو
5. Seoul	مدينة سول	10. Hong Kong	مدينة هونغ كونج

Vocabulary

cool	لطيف / رائع	heavy	ثقيل
lift	يرفع	coffee	قهوة
often	غالبًا		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs		أفعال منتظمة		Irregular Verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
lift	يرفع	lifted		see	يرى	saw	
need	يحتاج	needed		let	يدع / يترك	let	

Important expressions

تعبيرات هامة

1. What a cool plane !	١. يا لها من طائرة رائعة !
2. Come on !	٢. تقدم / هيا !
3. by myself	٣. بنفسى
4. Let me help you.	٤. دعنى أساعدك.
5. at night	٥. ليلاً
6. a cup of	٦. كوب من
7. a lot of = lots of	٧. الكثير من

B Point and say the words.

أشر إلى الكلمات السابقة على الصورة واذكرها.

C Listen and point.

استمع وأشر.

Boy : What a cool plane!
Friend : I want to see it.
Boy : No.
Friend : Come on! Let me see it.



Girl : I can't lift this by myself.
It's so heavy.
Kareem : Here, let me help you.
Girl : Thanks.



Mona : Do you ever fly at night?
Male pilot : Yes, I often fly at night. I need a lot of coffee.
Mona : How much coffee do you have ?
Male pilot : I usually drink four cups of coffee.



Language Functions

1 Expressing admiration and enthusiasm : التعبير عن الإعجاب والحماس

What a cool plane !

2 Expressing inability to do something

التعبير عن عدم القدرة على فعل شيء ما :

- I can't lift this by myself.
- It's so heavy.
- Let me help you.

(so = very)

★ عند الرد نستخدم :

3 Asking about quantity : السؤال عن الكمية :

- How much coffee do you have ?
- I usually drink four cups of coffee.

General Exercises

Word Time

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. Rome - Paris - London - week (الإسكندرية ٢٠١٧) (.....)
2. city - plane - taxi - train (المنوفية ٢٠١٦) (.....)
3. himself - your - herself - itself (الفيوم - غرب الفيوم ٢٠١٨) (.....)
4. cool - plane - heavy - happy (.....)
5. drink - eat - heavy - fly (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **SB** I often fly night. I need a lot of coffee.
a. in b. at c. on d. of
2. I three cups of coffee. (السويس ٢٠١٥)
a. cook b. drink c. eat d. play
3. is he from ?
a. When b. Where c. What d. How
4. is the capital of Italy.
a. Tokyo b. Rome c. Paris d. Seoul
5. Tokyo is in
a. China b. Japan c. France d. Italy
6. **SB** I can't lift this box by
a. himself b. herself c. yourself d. myself
7. How juice do you have ? - Two cups.
a. long b. much c. often d. many (كفر الشيخ - سيدى سالم ٢٠١٨)
8. San Francisco is a big in the United States.
a. city b. country c. house d. village (السويس ٢٠١٤)

General Exercises

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Tom is my friend. He is from New York. He comes to Egypt every year. He visits the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. He goes to Giza to visit the Pyramids and our monuments أثار. He also likes going to the zoo. He likes animals. His favourite animal is the lion. Before coming back to New York, Tom visits Alexandria. He likes to swim in the sea and build sand castles.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tom is from
a. Cairo b. Giza c. Luxor d. New York
2. Tom visits before coming back to New York.
a. Giza b. Cairo c. Alexandria d. Aswan

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why does Tom go to the zoo ?

4. What does Tom visit in Cairo ?

(أسوط ٢٠١٦)

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. by - lift - I - myself - can't - it. (الغربية - السنطة ٢٠١٨)

2. coffee - do - How - have - you - much ? (جنوب سيناء ٢٠١٧)



Focus & Practice Time

SB pages 21&22 WB pages 21&22

Focus Time

A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

Months of the year

شهور السنة

 January يناير S M T W T F S	 February فبراير S M T W T F S	 March مارس S M T W T F S	 April أبريل S M T W T F S
 May مايو S M T W T F S	 June يونيو S M T W T F S	 July يوليو S M T W T F S	 August أغسطس S M T W T F S
 September سبتمبر S M T W T F S	 October أكتوبر S M T W T F S	 November نوفمبر S M T W T F S	 December ديسمبر S M T W T F S

Focus Time

Months of the year

شهور السنة

January	يناير	July	يوليو
February	فبراير	August	أغسطس
March	مارس	September	سبتمبر
April	إبريل	October	أكتوبر
May	مايو	November	نوفمبر
June	يونيو	December	ديسمبر

B Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

When did he go to Hong Kong ?
they

He went in April.
They

How long was he there ?
were they

He was there for one week.
They were

LANGUAGE FOCUS

* Wh-questions with "When" and "How long".

كيفية تكوين السؤال باستخدام When...? بمعنى متى ؟ و How long..? كم المدة ؟

1 When + did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

تستخدم هذه الصيغة للسؤال عن وقت فعل شيء ما في الماضي.



When did he go to Tokyo ?

He went in June.



تستخدم (in) قبل شهور وفصول السنة أما الأيام نستخدم قبلها (on).

2 How long + was / were + فاعل + there ?

تستخدم (How long ?) للسؤال عن المدة بعني كم المدة ... ؟



How long was she there ?



She was there for two days.

عند الإجابة تستخدم (المدة + for)



How long were they there ?



They were there for four days.

Exercise on Language Focus

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- did they go to Paris ? - They went in June.
a. How many b. Who c. Where d. When
- When did he to Hong Kong ?
a. go b. went c. gone d. goes
(الأقصر - اسنا ٢٠١٨)
- He was in Hong Kong a week.
a. in b. on c. of d. for (الفيوم ٢٠١٧)
- was he in Cairo ? He was there for two days. (القاهرة ٢٠١٥)
a. How much b. How often c. How many d. How long
- She went to Aswan August.
a. in b. on c. at d. to
(القاهرة - غرب القاهرة ٢٠١٨)

C Look at page (20). Listen and point.

انظر إلى صفحة رقم (٢٠) في كتاب الطالب ثم استمع وأشر .

Practice Time

A Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner

استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

A : When did you go to San Francisco ?

B : I went in March.

A : How long were you there ?

B : I was there for two days.

- When did you go to Hong Kong ?
I went in April.
How long were you there ?
I was there for one week.



- When did he go to Paris ?
He went in December.
How long was he there ?



- When did she go to Tokyo ?
She went in June.
How long was she there ?
She was there



When did you go to London ?

I went

How long ?

I was there for one day.

you/London ?
January
one day



When did you go to Seoul ?

How long were you there ?

We were there for four days.

you/Seoul?
August
four days



When did he go to New York City ?

He went in May.

he/New York City ?
May
two days



When did she go to Honolulu ?

She went in September.

How long was she there ?

She was there for one day.

she/Honolulu ?
September
one day



They went in July.

They were there for five days.

they/Rome ?
July
five days



B Look at page (20). Practise with a partner.

انظر الى الصورة صفحة رقم (٢٠) في كتاب الطالب ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

General Exercises

Focus Time & Practice Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. did she go to Paris ? - In October.

a. What b. Where c. When d. Whose

2. How were you there ? - For two weeks.

a. often b. tall c. long d. many

3. I went to Paris September. (القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠١٨)

a. on b. to c. in d. with

4. **SB** When did you go to San Francisco ? - I in March.

a. go b. went c. gone d. goes

5. September is my favourite (بني سويف ٢٠١٦)

a. day b. game c. month d. city

6. There are months in a year.

a. four b. seven c. twelve d. ten

(جنوب سيناء - الطور ٢٠١٨ / قنا ٢٠١٤ / القاهرة ٢٠١٦)

7. There are four in a year.

a. days b. weeks c. years d. seasons

8. The month which comes just before March is

a. May b. January c. February d. December

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. May - March - Monday - July (الوادي الجديد - الداخلة ٢٠١٨)

2. Hong Kong - Paris - Tokyo - December

3. one - Rome - five - two

4. in - on - August - for

5. March - Sunday - Monday - Friday (القاهرة ٢٠١٧)

3 **SB** Read the passage and answer the questions:

Today is Monday and two pilots are visiting the classroom now. There is a big map on the wall. Do you know the names of the cities ? Here's Tokyo and here's Cairo. Can you see Seoul ? New York City, San Francisco and Honolulu are all in the USA. Can you see Rome ? It's the capital of Italy. Can you see Paris ? It's the capital of France.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular Verbs		Irregular Verbs	
Present مضارع	Past ماضى	Present مضارع	Past ماضى
visit يزور	visited	find يجد	found
help يساعد	helped	buy يشتري	bought
call ينادى	called	get يحصل على	got
rent يستأجر	rented	forget ينسى	forgot

Important expressions and prepositions

1. over 30 million people	أكثر من ٣٠ مليون شخص
2. Call us at	اتصل بنا على رقم
3. for information	للمعلومات
4. get tickets for	يحصل على تذاكر لـ
5. take a boat tour	يأخذ جولة بالقارب

New places

1. New York City
2. The Statue of Liberty
3. The Empire State
4. Broadway theatre
5. Macy's
6. Orlando
7. Big Apple
8. Carnegie Deli
9. Disney World

١. مدينة نيويورك (تعد أكبر المدن في الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية).
٢. تمثال الحرية (هو أحد رموز مدينة نيويورك).
٣. مبنى الإمبريستيت (هو أطول ناطحة سحاب في مدينة نيويورك بالولايات المتحدة الأمريكية مكون من ١٠٢ طابق ويصل ارتفاعه ٤٤٣ متر).
٤. مسرح برودواي (هو مسرح مشهور في مانهاتن - مدينة نيويورك وهو أحد معالم الجذب السياحي هناك).
٥. مايسيز (هي سلسلة متاجر أمريكية).
٦. أورلاندو (هي مدينة تقع في مقاطعة أورينج في وسط ولاية فلوريدا الأمريكية) تحتوى على عالم والت ديزنى.
٧. التفاحة الكبيرة (لقب يطلق على مدينة نيويورك).
٨. كارنيجى ديلى (هو أحد أشهر المطاعم في مدينة نيويورك).
٩. عالم ديزنى لاند بمدينة أورلاندو (وهو أكبر منتج ترفيهى في العالم).

Reading Time

Welcome to New York City, the Big Apple!

58 page 23

Introduction : مقدمة

"Welcome to New York City, the Big Apple!" is a passage about the famous places in New York City.
 'مرحباً بكم في مدينة نيويورك والمشهورة باسم "التفاحة الكبيرة" هي فقرة عن الأماكن المشهورة في مدينة نيويورك.'

Main points : النقاط الرئيسية

1. New York City is an exciting city in America. ١. نيويورك مدينة مدهشة في أمريكا.
2. People visit New York City because it's one of the world's most exciting places. ٢. يزور الناس مدينة نيويورك لأنها أحد الأماكن المدهشة في العالم.

A Listen and read along.

استمع واقرأ.

Welcome to New York City, the Big Apple!

Over 30 million⁽¹⁾ people visit New York City every year. Why? Because it's one of the world's most exciting⁽²⁾ places. There are 18 thousand restaurants, 10 thousand shops and 150 museums. Basketball, opera, theatre, jazz⁽³⁾ ... New York City has it all!

Visit the Statue of Liberty⁽⁴⁾ and the Empire State Building. Get tickets for a show at a Broadway theatre. Have a sandwich at Carnegie Deli. Don't forget to shop at Macy's! It's the world's biggest department store⁽⁵⁾.

Walking tours, boat tours and bus tours⁽⁶⁾ are available daily⁽⁷⁾. For information, call us at 1 (800) 555-2112. We can help you find a hotel room, buy plane tickets, or rent⁽⁸⁾ a car.



Check Vocabulary

- (1) مليون
- (2) مثير / مدهش
- (3) موسيقى الجاز
- (4) تمثال الحرية
- (5) متجر متعدد الأقسام
- (6) جولات
- (7) متاح يومياً
- (8) يؤجر



Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Over 30 million people New York City every year.
 a. call b. visit c. get d. buy

2. You can have a at Carnegie Deli Restaurant.
a. show b. sandwich c. book d. party
3. is the most exciting city in America. (النبا ٢٠١٧)
a. Cairo b. Seoul c. New York d. Rome
4. Don't forget to at Macy's!
a. take b. shop c. make d. have
5. Many tours are daily in New York City.
a. valuable b. available c. exciting d. over

B Listen and circle True or False.

1. People visit New York City because it's one of the world's most exciting places. True False
2. There are 80 thousand restaurants in New York City. True False
3. Carnegie Deli is the world's largest department store. True False
4. When you're in New York City, you can take a boat tour. True False

C Read the question. Write the answer.

1. How many museums are there in New York City?
There are 150 museums in New York City.
2. Why do people visit New York City?
People visit New York City because it's one of the world's most exciting places.
3. What kinds of tours are available?
Walking tours, boat tours and bus tours are available daily.
4. What is the "Big Apple"?
New York City is the "Big Apple."

Welcome to ORLANDO!

WB page 23

Introduction : مقدمة

"Welcome to ORLANDO" is a passage about famous places in Orlando.
مرحباً بكم في مدينة أورلاندو هي فقرة تتحدث عن الأماكن المشهورة في مدينة أورلاندو.

Main Points : النقاط الرئيسية

1. Over 35 million people visit Orlando every year.
أقرأ القطعة صفحة Workbook كتاب المعاصر
2. There are 82 parks in Orlando.

Your Time

A Listen and answer the questions.

استمع إلى الأسئلة ثم أجب عليها من خلال معرفتك.

1. What time did you eat lunch yesterday?
.....
2. What time did you do your homework yesterday?
.....
3. Did you go to the beach in July?
.....
4. Did you go to Sharm El-Sheikh in August?
.....

B Pair work. Read the questions. Write the answers. Then ask your partner.

1. Where did you go on your favourite trip?
.....
2. When did you go to?
.....
3. How long were you there?
.....

You	Your Partner
1.	1.
2.	2.
3.	3.

C Review. Read and write.

اقرأ واكتب إجابتك على الأسئلة من خلال معرفتك.

1. I sometimes in April.
2. I always in September.
3. I never in October.
4. is my favourite month.

General Exercises

Reading & Your Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Do you visit the of Liberty in New York City?
a. Statue b. Studio c. School d. House
(الغريبة - غرب طنطا ٢٠١٨)
- Macy's is the world's department store.
a. as big b. big c. bigger d. biggest
- I'm a good time in Orlando.
a. having b. playing c. eating d. doing
- WB** tickets for a show at Universal Studios.
a. Get b. To get c. Getting d. Gets
- City is the "Big Apple".
a. London b. Seoul c. New York d. Paris
- For information, us at 0244444.
a. call b. feed c. rent d. speak
(الشرقية ٢٠١٥)
- SB** Where did you go your favourite trip?
a. in b. on c. into d. to
- When did he to London?
a. go b. goes c. went d. going
(كفر الشيخ ٢٠١٦)

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- the Nile - Orlando - Honolulu - San Francisco (.....)
(القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠١٨)
- visit - rent - New York - call (.....)
- hotel - theatre - sandwich - opera (.....)
- SB** April - September - go - October (.....)
- favourite - available - panda - exciting (.....)

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

John is my friend. He is from New York. He comes to Egypt every year. He comes in winter because the weather is nice. He visits the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. He goes to Giza to visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx. He also visits the temples at Luxor. He likes taking photographs of our great monuments آثار. He stays in a big hotel in Giza.

General Exercises

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- John is from
a. Cairo b. Giza c. Luxor d. New York
- John can visit the in Cairo.
a. Egyptian Museum b. Pyramids c. temples d. Sphinx

B. Answer the following questions:

- Why does John go to Giza?
.....
- What does John like to take?
.....

(أسيرط ٢٠١٦)

4 Write an email of SEVEN sentences:

Write an email to your friend Omar to tell him about your visit to New York City last holiday. Your name is Ali. Your email address is ali@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is omar@gmail.com.

To :
From :
Subject :

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

- SB** what is the "Big Apple"
.....
- Emad went to rome in march.
.....

١. تعلم كيفية التعامل مع الفقرة الإنشائية والبريد الإلكتروني.

ادرس التعبيرات الآتية لتساعدك على كتابة جمل مرتبطة بالوحدة.

Study

Cities	مدن
Rome	Paris
Cairo	New York City
Tokyo	Hong Kong

Months		شهور
March	May	July
April	June	August

Places	اماكن
shops	museums
restaurants	hotels

Try

بعد دراسة ما سبق حاول أن تكون جمل باستخدام التعبيرات السابقة.

The Word	Try to make a sentence
Hong Kong	Hong Kong is very nice.
Cairo	
restaurants	
April	



Answer

Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"Cities around the world"

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

1. went - **Mr Eid** - May - Rome - to - in.
2. have - **I** - flight - an overseas - a month - once.

فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
1		
2		

٢ الجمل الأمرية

1. me - **Let** - help - you .
2. drink - **Don't** - coffee - much - too .

Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
1		
2		

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال بـ (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

1. did - **When** - Mona - Tokyo - to - go ?
2. was - **How long** - she - there ?

كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة
1				
2				

(ب) السؤال بـ (هل .. ؟)

1. we - **Could** - a few - ask - questions - you ?
2. you - **Do** - being - like - pilot - a ?

فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة
1			
2			

لمزيد من التدريبات El Moasser student's writing skill في نهاية كتاب الشرح

An interview with a pilot project worksheet

ورقة بحثية عن مقابلة مع طيار

Objectives الأهداف

Make an interview with a pilot.

قم بعمل مقابلة مع طيار.

Get started الاستعد

1. Do you fly the plane by yourself ?

١. هل تقودين الطائرة بنفسك؟



2. How many female pilots work for the airlines ?

٢. كم عدد الطيارين الإناث العاملين في شركة الطيران؟



Project المشروع

Make a poster about an interview with a pilot.

قم بعمل ملصق (بوستر) عن مقابلة مع طيار.

Project resources مصادر المشروع

* <https://www.ekb.eg>

- بنك المعرفة المصري

* The internet

- الإنترنت

* Student's books of different

- الكتب المدرسية للمواد المختلفة

Your Poster الملصق الخاص بك

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتي



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
فم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد
فم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

At the end of this unit, I will be able to في نهاية هذه الوحدة، ساكون قادرًا على

1 I can say these words أستطيع نطق الكلمات الآتية

<input type="checkbox"/> interview	<input type="checkbox"/> pilot
<input type="checkbox"/> copilot	<input type="checkbox"/> captain
<input type="checkbox"/> overseas	<input type="checkbox"/> London
<input type="checkbox"/> Cairo	<input type="checkbox"/> tour

2 I can read and write these sentences أستطيع قراءة وكتابة الجمل الآتية

<input type="checkbox"/> Do you ever fly abroad?
<input type="checkbox"/> When did you go to Seoul ?
<input type="checkbox"/> They were there for five days.
<input type="checkbox"/> Paris is the capital of France.

Teacher's notes ملاحظات المعلم

Parent's notes ملاحظات ولي الأمر

لمزيد من التدريبات جزء المتابعة اليومية في نهاية كتاب الشرح

Revision

Unit 9

هذا الجزء يساعدك على تنمية مهارات التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

1 Conversation Time

Laila : Captain Marwa, we'd like to interview ⁽¹⁾ you for our school newspaper ⁽²⁾. Could we ask you a few questions ⁽³⁾ ?

Captain Marwa : Sure. Go ahead.

Laila : How many female pilots work for your airline ?

Captain Marwa : I think one third of the pilots are female.

Laila : Do you ever fly abroad ⁽⁴⁾ ?

Captain Marwa : Yes. I have an overseas flight ⁽⁵⁾ once a month.

Ramy : Do you fly the plane by yourself ?

Captain Marwa : No. I always have a copilot.

Ramy : Do you like being a pilot ?

Captain Marwa : Yes, very much !

Laila : Thanks for your time, captain Marwa.

Captain Marwa : My pleasure ⁽⁶⁾.

Check Vocabulary

- (1) بدري مقابلة
- (2) صحيفة / صحيفة
- (3) أسئلة
- (4) بالخارج
- (5) رحلة جوية
- (6) بأمر من دونائي سروري

2 Word Time

Rome	مدينة روما	Paris	مدينة باريس
Cairo	مدينة القاهرة	Honolulu	مدينة هونولولو
London	مدينة لندن	San Francisco	مدينة سان فرانسيسكو
Seoul	مدينة سول	Hong Kong	مدينة هونغ كونج
New York City	مدينة نيويورك	Tokyo	مدينة طوكيو

3 Focus Time & Practice Time

1. When + did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

تستخدم (When) للسؤال عن وقت فعل شيء ما في الماضي.

2. How long + was / were + فاعل + there ?

تستخدم (How long ?) للسؤال عن كم المدة ... ?

Workbook Unit 9

Word Time

Workbook

A. Write the names of the cities.



1. Tokyo
2. Honolulu
3. San Francisco
4. Rome
5. Paris
6. Cairo
7. London
8. Seoul
9. New York
10. Hong Kong

B. Write the questions and answers.

1. Where is she from ?
She's from Paris.
2. Where's she from ?
She's from Rome.
3. Where's he from ?
He's from Honolulu.
4. Where's he from ?
He is from Cairo.
5. Where's she from ?
She's from London.
6. Where's he from ?
He's from Tokyo.

Conversation Time

Workbook

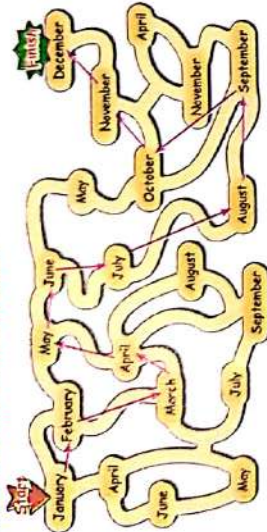
A. Read and number the sentences in the correct order.

- 3 Do you ever fly abroad ?
- 7 Do you like being a pilot ?
- 6 No. I always have a copilot.
- 4 Yes. I have an overseas flight once a month.
- 8 Yes, very much !
- 1 How many female pilots work for your airline ?
- 5 Do you fly the plane by yourself ?
- 2 I think one third of the pilots are female.

B. Look at A. Answer the questions.

1. Is the woman a chef ?
2. Does she ever have a copilot ?
3. How often does she fly abroad ?

A. Connect the months in order.



B. Read and write.

- When did they go to Paris?
They went in May.
- When did they go to Rome?
They went in November.
- When did they go to Seoul?
They went in September.

C. Read and write.



- When did she go to Paris?
She went in April.
- How long was she there?
She was there for four days.

January	February	March
April	May	June
July	August	September
October	November	December

A. Write the questions and answers.



- When did she go to San Francisco?
She went there in October.
How long was she there?
She was there for two weeks.



- When did he go to Rome?
He went in August.
How long was he there?
He was there for five days.



- When did they go to Tokyo?
They went in April.
How long were they there?
They were there for eight days.

B. Read the question. Write the answer.

- How long was Ahmed in New York?
- When did Susie go to Cairo?
- How long was she there?
- When did Jack go to London?

Dear Mum and Dad,
I'm having a good time in Honolulu. I go swimming every day. Ahmed went to New York in May. He was there for one month. Susie went to Cairo in June. She visited her grandparents for two weeks. Jack flew to London for a holiday in March. He was there for three days.
See you next month!
Love,
Khaleel

A. Read.

Welcome to ORLANDO!

Over 35 million people visit Orlando every year. Why? Because it's one of the world's most exciting places. There are 100 thousand hotel rooms, hundreds of shops, and 82 parks. Basketball, theatre, music ... Orlando has it all!

Visit Disney World and Sea World. Tours are available daily. Get tickets for a show at Universal Studios. Don't forget to go to the beach!

For information, call us at 1 (800) 555-3456.

B. Read and match.

- There are 100 thousand shops in Orlando.
- There are 82 visit Orlando every year.
- Over 35 million people hotel rooms in Orlando.
- There are hundreds of parks in Orlando.

C. Read and circle True or False.

- You can watch basketball in Orlando.
- Tours aren't available at Sea World.
- You can see a show at Universal Studios.
- Orlando isn't an exciting place.

True False
True False
True False
True False

A. Write the months in order. Write what you like to do in each month.

Answers will vary.

- I like
- January
 - February
 - March
 - April
 - May
 - June
 - July
 - August
 - September
 - October
 - November
 - December

B. What's your favourite month? Why? Draw and write.

Answers will vary.



Test 7

on Unit



Collected from Governorates & Directorates Examinations
اختبار على الوحدة مجمع من امتحانات المحافظات والإدارات

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلّمك وضع دائرة.

- a. He went in April.
b. He went in May.
- a. She is from Paris.
b. He is from Paris.
- a. Do you like being a pilot?
b. Do you ever fly abroad?
- a. When did he go to Hong Kong?
b. How did he go to Hong Kong?

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

(الوادي الجديد ٢٠١٥)

(القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠١٨)

(الإسكندرية ٢٠١٧)

(القاهرة ٢٠١٤)

2 Listen and complete:

استمع إلى معلّمك وأكمل:

- Laila : Could I (1) you a few questions?
Captain Marwa: Sure. Go ahead.
Laila : Do you (2) fly abroad?
Captain Marwa: Yes, once a (3)
Laila : Do you fly the plane by yourself?
Captain Marwa: No, I always (4) a copilot.

(قنا ٢٠١٦)

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- They went to Paris April.
a. on b. in c. at d. with
- Nabil, the pilot, usually has a on the plane.
a. plane b. female c. copilot d. newspaper
- I think one of the pilots are female.
a. three b. thirty c. third d. thirteen

(بنى سويف ٢٠١٨)

(القليوبية ٢٠١٤)

(المنوفية ٢٠١٤)

Tests on Unit 9

- How many female pilots work for your ?
a. school b. zoo c. museum d. airline
- Maha went to Luxor in April. She was there a week.
a. in b. on c. at d. for
- My friend to Luxor last week.
a. go b. goes c. going d. went
- My uncle is a pilot. He works at the
a. sea b. airport c. school d. mountain
- Do you fly a plane by ?
a. itself b. himself c. myself d. yourself

(الإسكندرية ٢٠١٥) / (بنى سويف ٢٠١٥) / (الإسكندرية ٢٠١٤)

(القاهرة / الشرقية ٢٠١٧)

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- day - month - week - city
- Cairo - London - Rome - Egypt
- January - May - Saturday - July
- pilot - teacher - copilot - library
- run - walked - flew - got

(سوهاج - البليتا ٢٠١٨)

(كفر الشيخ ٢٠١٦)

(الإسكندرية ٢٠١٧)

(أسيوط ٢٠١٤)

(دمياط ٢٠١٩)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

There's much to do in New York. Millions of people visit it every year. It's one of the world's most exciting cities. There are 18 thousand restaurants, 10 thousand shops and 150 museums. New York city has basketball, opera and theatre. In the afternoon, I went shopping at Macy's. It's the world's biggest department store. Walking tours, boat tours and bus tours are available daily.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Millions of people visit every year.
a. London b. New York c. Paris d. Seoul
- Macy's is the world's biggest department
a. theatre b. zoo c. store d. restaurant

Unit 9

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do people visit New York City ?

4. What kinds of tours are available ?

(الفلبينية - بنها ٢٠١٨)

C Writing

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences :

"At the airport"

جواب هذه في نهاية الكتاب

(الإسكندرية - شرق ٢٠١٩)

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. have - she - a - ever - Does - copilot ? (المنوفية ٢٠١٥)

2. a month - flight - have - I - once - a. (الدقهلية ٢٠١٦)

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. april is Heba s favourite month. (المنيا ٢٠١٧)

2. when did Ali go to London (المنيا - مطاى ٢٠١٨)

Test 8

on Unit



يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

تنويه

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

1. a. He is from Tanta.
- b. He is from Cairo.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

2. **SB** a. I was there for two days.
- b. I was there for three days.

3. a. When did she go to Paris ?
- b. How did she go to Paris ?

4. a. How long did you stay there ?
- b. How long did she stay in Paris ?

2 Listen and complete :

استمع إلى معلمك وأكمل

Basmala : Where did you go, Soha ?

Soha : I went to New York City.

Basmala : When (1) you go there ?

Soha : I went in (2)

Basmala : How (3) were you there ?

Soha : I was there (4) 3 weeks.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A : did you go to Paris ? B : - In October.
a. What b. When c. How long d. Who
2. Over 30 million people Orlando every year.
a. visit b. get c. call d. buy
3. Can we ask you questions ?
a. a few b. a little c. much d. a lot

4. were you in Alexandria ? – For four months.
a. How long b. When c. How much d. How many
5. I stayed for two nights at a
a. hotel b. bank c. restaurant d. theatre
6. I to Honolulu last April.
a. went b. bought c. ate d. took
7. The pilot usually has an overseas once a month.
a. fight b. follow c. fly d. flight
8. I was in London eight days.
a. from b. at c. on d. for

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. restaurant - museum - hotel - pilot (.....)
2. car - ticket - bus - plane (.....)
3. heavy - night - cool - exciting (.....)
4. ten - bank - million - hundred (.....)
5. sing - play - year - go (.....)

5 SB Read the passage and answer the questions:

Over 30 million people visit New York City, The Big Apple, every year. Why ? Because it's one of the world's most exciting places. There are 10 thousand shops, and 150 museums. Basketball, opera, theatre, jazz New York City has it all !

Visit the Statue of Liberty and the Empire State Building. Get tickets for a show at a Broadway theatre. Have a sandwich at Carnegie Deli. Don't forget to shop at Macy's ! It's the world's biggest department store.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are 10 shops in New York City.
a. hundred b. thousand c. million d. ten

2. Over 30 million people visit New York City every
a. day b. year c. week d. month

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How many museums are there in New York City ?

4. What is the "Big Apple" ?

C Writing

6 SB Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences :

"Cities around the world"



7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. always - has - She - a copilot.
.....
2. did - Paris - How long - in - stay - you ?
.....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. **SB** why do people visit New York City
.....
2. Do you fly the plane hany ?
.....

Quiz 2

on Units

6, 7, 8 & 9

اختبار تراكمي على الوحدات (٦، ٧، ٨ و ٩)

يقوم المعلم باختيار اختبار مصغر (واحد) من (B) او (A) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمعلومات الواردة في الوحدات.

Model A

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one :

1. flute - xylophone - practice - harp
2. operator - garden - officer - teacher
3. count - bubble - speak - spell
4. November - April - shop - July

(.....)
(.....)
(.....)
(.....)

2 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. When did he go to hong Kong

2. no, he doesn t play the tuba well.

Model B

1 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

1. did - How - cello - play - she - the ?

2. pandas - Adult - kilos - weigh - 80 - to 125.

2 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. i'm from egypt.

2. What s your favourite month, tarek ?

UNIT 10

At School

فى المدرسة



Main Book
OR
Time Saving
اختار طريقة شرح
ومذكرات بيت كتاب الشرح
أو الكراسة التفاعلية
صفحة ٣

Aims of the Unit : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

Listening/Speaking

- discuss yesterday's TV programs
- مناقشة برامج تليفزيونية عرضت بالأمس
- express conditions & emotions / attitudes
- التعبير عن الشروط و العواطف و الاتجاهات
- express consequences
- التعبير عن النتائج
- identify speakers in a conversation
- تحديد المتحدثين فى المحادثة

Reading

- read information on a website
- قراءة معلومات على موقع إلكترونى من مواقع الإنترنت

Vocabulary

- actions
- تعلم المفردات اللغوية الخاصة : أفعال الحركة

Grammar

- adjectives
- استخدام الصفات
- if clauses
- استخدام الحالة الأولى من حالات if الشرطية

CHECK
اُخْبِر

• استخدم كراسة المعاصر لمهارات الكتابة بلهجة الكتاب

• وكراسة المعاصر التفاعلية لإتقان الوحدة.

- * العلامة SB تسبق أسئلة كتاب الطالب.
- * العلامة WB تسبق أسئلة كتاب التدريبات.
- * نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب.



Conversation Time

SB page 25 WB page 25

Main Book
OR
Time Saving

أكثر طريقة شرح
بسهولة بين كتاب الشرح
والكتاب التفاعلية
صفحة ٢

Key Vocabulary

programme	برنامج
Africa	قارة أفريقيا
gorilla	حيوان الغوريلا
besides	بالإضافة إلى ذلك
neither	أيضا (لنفي)
TV (television)	تلفزيون

Active Vocabulary

yesterday	أمس
afternoon	بعد الظهر
house	منزل
really	حقا
cool	لطيف / ظريف / رائع
animals	حيوانات
tonight	الليلة
Yeah = Yes	نعم
match	مباراة
news	أخبار
fun	مرح / متعة
real	حقيقي
game	لعبة
bell	جرس
class	حصة / درس

لاحظ

- * تبدأ دائما قارات العالم بحرف كبير (capital) وتسبق بحرف الجر (in)
- A programme about animals in Africa.
- * يستخدم حرف الجر (on) قبل هذه الكلمات الآتية : (TV / radio / computer)
- * نستخدم التعبير (neither) (Me, neither)
- * بمعنى (ولا أنا أيضا) عند النفي.

لاحظ

- * حرف (h) في كلمة (yeah) صامت (silent) لا ينطق.
- * كلمة (news) لا تعد وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- That's good news.
- * تسبق كلمة (night) بحرف الجر (at)
- I do homework at night.
- أما كلمة (school night) تسبق بحرف الجر (on).
- I can't watch TV on a school night
- * عند عدم التساوي بين إثنين أو شيئين في صفة تستخدم :
- not as + صفة + as.
- It's not as fun as
- إنها ليست ممتعة ك

Conversation Time

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

1. What was on (TV) ?	١. ماذا كان معروضا على (التلفزيون) ؟
2. Time for class !	٢. حان وقت الدرس / الحصة !
3. too bad	٣. سي جدا / مؤسف للغاية
4. come over	٤. يأتي (إلى مكان) / يزور

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs	أفعال منتظمة	Irregular Verbs	أفعال غير منتظمة
Present	مضارع	Present	مضارع
miss	يفوت	let	يسمح / يدع
watch	يشاهد	come over	يمر على / يزور
want	يريد	came over	ماضي

Exercise

on Vocabulary

- * Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. programme - film - news - class (أسيرط - الغنايم ٢٠١٨)
2. night - morning - afternoon - cold (كفر الشيخ ٢٠١٦)
3. gorilla - football - monkey - dog
4. miss - class - watch - want
5. animal - real - cool - bad

Yesterday's TV programmes البرامج التلفزيونية بالأمس

• Characters شخصيات المحادثة



Sarah



Noha

• Topic موضوع المحادثة

Sarah and Noha are talking about TV programmes. Noha watched one about animals in Africa.

سارة و نهي يتكلمون عن البرامج التلفزيونية. شاهدت نهي برنامجا عن الحيوانات في قارة أفريقيا.

A Listen and repeat. Point to the speakers. Then listen again.

Sarah : Where were you yesterday afternoon ?

Noha : At Mona's house. We were watching TV.

Sarah : What was on ?

Noha : A programme about animals in Africa.

Sarah : Aw, I missed it. Was it good ?

Noha : Yeah, it was. The gorillas were really cool.

Sarah : Did you watch the football match last night ?

Noha : No, my mum was watching the news. Besides, I don't like watching football matches on TV.

Sarah : Me, neither. It's not as fun as watching a real game.

Noha : Hey! There's a good film on tonight. Do you want to come over ?

Sarah : I can't. My mum won't let me watch TV on a school night.

Noha : Too bad. Oh! There's the bell. Time for class!

سارة : أين كنت أمس بعد الظهر ؟

نهي : كنا نشاهد التلفاز بمنزل منى.

سارة : ما هو البرنامج الذى تم عرضه ؟

نهي : برنامج عن الحيوانات فى أفريقيا.

سارة : ياها! أنا لم ألق مشاهدة. هل كان عرصاً جيداً ؟

نهي : نعم، الغوريلا كانت حقاً رائعة.

سارة : هل شاهدت مباراة كرة القدم الليلة الماضية ؟

نهي : لا، كانت والدتي تشاهد الأخبار بالإضافة إلى ذلك أنا لا أفضّل مشاهدة مباريات كرة القدم فى التلفاز.

سارة : و لا أنا أيضاً. إنها ليست ممتعة لى كمشاهدة مباراة حقيقية.

نهي : هناك فيلم جيد سيتم عرضه هذه الليلة. هل تريد أن تأتي ؟

سارة : لا أستطيع. أمي لن تسمح لى بمشاهدة التلفزيون فى ليلة يعقبها الذهاب للمدرسة.

نهي : انه مؤسف جداً. أوه! إنه جرس الحصة. حان وقت الدرس!

Language Functions



• عند سؤال شخص ما عما كان معروفًا بالتلفزيون نستخدم :

- What was on ?
- ما هو البرنامج الذى تم عرضه ؟



1

• نستخدم (Where) للسؤال عن المكان :

- Where were you yesterday afternoon ?

- أين كنت أمس بعد الظهر ؟

• وللد نستخدم :

• المكان + At .



3

• نستخدم (Aw) كتعبير صوتي يقال

للتعبير عن الحزن أو الأسف.

- Aw,

Unit 10



4

• عند إبداء الرغبة في فعل شيء ما (تحبه) نستخدم:
Subj. الفاعل + like(s) + inf. + ing.
• نستخدم عند إبداء عدم الرغبة في فعل شيء ما لا (تحبه) نستخدم:
Subj. الفاعل + don't + like + inf. + ing.

5

• عند الاتفاق مع شخص ما على رأي أو شيء ما (منفي) نستخدم:
- Me, neither. - ولا أنا أيضًا.
• نستخدم (Hey!) كتعبير صوتي للفت الانتباه.



6

• للتعبير عن الحزن نستخدم:
- Too bad. - سئ للغاية / جداً.
• نستخدم (Oh!) كتعبير صوتي يدل على الدهشة:
- Oh!

B Role-play the conversation.

قم بلعبة تبادل الأدوار مع زملائك للمحادثة السابقة.

General Exercises

Conversation Time

1 Listen and circle : استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة :
(الجيزة ٢٠١٥) نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

- a. We were at school.
b. We were at home.
- a. Yes, I did.
b. Yes, I do.
- a. Did he watch the film last night?
b. Did he watch the football match last night?

(كفر الشيخ - سيدى سالم ٢٠١٨)

- a. Where were you yesterday afternoon?
b. Where were you yesterday morning?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل :
(القاهرة ٢٠١٨) نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

Maha : What was on yesterday afternoon?
Dina : A (1) about animals in Africa.
Maha : Aw, I (2) it. Was it good?
Dina : Yeah, it was. The (3) were really cool.
Maha : Did you (4) the football match?
Dina : No, I don't like watching football matches on TV.
(الإسكندرية ٢٠١٥)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:
(الإسكندرية ٢٠١٦)

- I a programme on TV about animals in Africa.
a. lost b. missed c. blew d. threw
(القاهرة ٢٠١٨)
- Aya is as tall Noha.
a. so b. as c. but d. to
- Did you see the football yesterday?
a. match b. class c. plan d. radio

Unit 10

4. A: I don't like fish. B: Me,
 a. too b. so c. neither d. to
5. **SB** My mum won't me watch TV on a school night.
 a. come b. have c. let d. miss
6. There was a programme about wild animals in Africa TV last night.
 a. in b. on c. by d. at (٢٠١٥ مطروح)
7. Hurry up, we are for school.
 a. early b. fun c. late d. quick
8. Would you like to come ?
 a. at b. over c. on d. off (٢٠١٥ اوفاج)

- 4** Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:
 "A programme about animals"

يأمر منه في نهاية الكتاب

- 5** Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. **SB** good - a - **There's** - tonight - film - on.
 2. **SB** come - **Do** - want - over - you - to ?

- 6** Punctuate the following sentences:

1. last Monday, I went to giza.
 2. She s going to stay in egypt.

Word Time

SB page 26 WB page 26



Unit 10

A Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

Key Vocabulary

Actions

أفعال الحركة

1 skip lunch



تُفَوِّت وجبة الغداء

2 forget my homework



أنسى واجبي المدرسي

3 go to bed late



تذهب للفرش متأخراً

4 fall off my chair



أسقط من على الكرسي الخاص بي

5 get a good mark



يحصل على درجة جيدة

6 lose my favourite pencil



أفقد قلمي الرصاص المفضل

7 make a mistake



يخطئ / يرتكب خطأ

8 take off my jacket



أخلع سترتي

9 win a prize

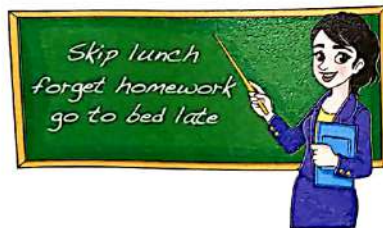


يفوز بجائزة

10 turn off the fan



يطفى المروحة



Word Time

Vocabulary

today's special	طبق اليوم الخاص	positive	أكيد / إيجابي
beef	لحم بقرى	mood	مزاج
potatoes	بطاطس	hungry	جوعان

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs	أفعال منتظمة	Irregular Verbs	أفعال غير منتظمة
Present مضارع	Past ماضى	Present مضارع	Past ماضى
turn off	يطفى / يطفئ	forget	ينسى
borrow	يستعير	fall off	يقع
skip	يُفَوِّت / يتغيب عن	make	يصنع
		take off	يخلع ملابس
		lose	يفقد
		win	يفوز
			forgot
			fell off
			made
			took off
			lost
			won

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It's hot, you can the fan. (القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠١٨)
 - turn off
 - turn on
 - look at
 - fall off
- I off my bike on my way to school yesterday. (أسوان ٢٠١٩)
 - fell
 - went
 - had
 - got
- If you lunch, you'll be hungry. (شمال سيناء / الشيا ٢٠١٧)
 - eat
 - skip
 - cook
 - throw
- If you take off your jacket, you'll be (الدقهلية - السبلواين ٢٠١٨)
 - tired
 - nervous
 - happy
 - cold
- Soha would like to a prize.
 - win
 - fall off
 - go
 - turn off

Unit 10

6. I a mistake. (أسيرط ٢٠١٥)
 a. lost b. fell c. made d. played
 7. My father gave me a prize because I a good mark.
 a. played b. got c. went d. won
 8. I'm sorry. I my homework.
 a. made b. forgot c. won d. took

B Point and say the words. أشير إلى الكلمات السابقة على الصورة وأذكرها.

C Listen and point. استمع وأشير.

Boy : Excuse me. May I borrow a pencil ?

Mona : Sure. Here you are.

Boy : Thanks.



A : When did you go to Paris ?

B : I went in June.

A : How long were you there ?

B : I was there for three days.



Waitress : Here you are. Today's special is beef and potatoes.

Miss Nadia : No, thank you. I'm not in the mood for beef.

Waitress : Are you sure ?

Miss Nadia : Positive. I'm not hungry today.



General Exercises

Word Time

1 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. make - do - forget - lunch (كفر الشيخ - فود ٢٠١٨) ()
 2. boys - vegetables - fruits - biscuits ()
 3. late - beef - short - positive ()
 4. on - jacket - off - in ()
 5. bag - pencil - skip - book ()

2 Read the passage and answer the questions :

Fatma and Dina are friends at El-Salam Primary School. Fatma is always at the top of her class. All the teachers like her. She is polite. She always studies her lessons well. Dina always goes to school late in the morning. She never helps her mother at home. So, teachers at school are always angry with her. I advise you not to be like Dina, but you should be like Fatma.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Fatma and Dina are
 a. teachers b. pupils c. pilots d. doctors
 2. Teachers are always with Dina.
 a. happy b. hungry c. funny d. angry

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do the teachers like Fatma ?

4. When does Dina go to school ?

(أسيرط ٢٠١٥)

Unit 10

3 SB Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences :

"Food in a restaurant"

جواب منه في نهاية الكتاب

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

1. did - Why - skip - you - lunch ? (القاهرة - غرب القاهرة ١٨ - ٢٠١٧ - الإسماعيلية ١٧ - ٢٠١٧)

2. SB the - mood - I'm not - beef - for - in.

5 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. Last friday, Laila went to the cinema

2. did Ayman see Ahmed last night



Spotlight

راجع الدرس قبل الانتقال للدرس التالي

أهم العبارات التي وردت في درس الـ (WORD TIME)

skip lunch	يُفوت وجبة الغذاء	lose my pencil	أفقد قلّمي الرصاص
forget homework	ينسى الواجب المدرسي	make a mistake	يخطئ / يرتكب خطأ
go to bed late	يذهب للفراش متأخراً	take off my jacket	أخلع الجاكيت الخاص بي
fall off my chair	أسقط من على الكرسي	win a prize	يفوز بجائزة
get a good mark	يحصل على درجة جيدة	turn off the fan	يطفى المروحة



Focus & Practice Time

SB pages 27&28 WB pages 27&28

Focus Time

A Listen and repeat.

استمع ورد.

LANGUAGE FOCUS

1 Adjectives : الصفات :

الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم وتأتي قبله أو تأتي بعد Verb (to be).

- Noha is a happy girl.

- Ali is hungry.



1 hungry جائع



2 nervous متوتر / عصبى



3 tired متعب / مجهد



4 embarrassed مرتبك / محرج



5 happy سعيد



6 sad حزين



7 disappointed محبط



8 cold بارد / يشعر بالبرودة



9 hot حار / يشعر بالحر



10 proud فخور

Unit 10

2 First conditional clause with (If) : حالة (If) الشرطية الأولى :

تستخدم للتعبير عن احتمال حدوث شيء في المستقبل.

If / إذا / لو Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط Future Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط (will / won't + inf. المصدر)

Future Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط (will / won't + inf. المصدر) if / إذا / لو Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

- If I forget my homework, I'll be nervous.
- If she loses her favourite pencil, she'll be sad.
- He'll be happy if he gets a good mark.

لاحظ وضع Comma (,) بعد جملة فعل الشرط إذا كانت (If) في بداية الجملة.

B Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

If I skip lunch, I'll be hungry.

If she skips lunch, she'll be hungry.



Exercise on Language Focus

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- I forget my homework, I will be nervous.
a. So b. If c. Who d. Why (الجيزة ٢٠١٧)
- If you take off your jacket, you'll cold.
a. been b. being c. are d. be (سوهاج ٢٠١٦)
- If you turn the fan, you will be hot.
a. off b. on c. after d. in

Practice Time

- If he off his chair, he'll be embarrassed.
a. fall b. feel c. falls d. felt (الغربية ٢٠١٧)
- If she her homework, she'll be nervous.
a. forgot b. forget c. forgets d. will forget
- If he wins a prize, he proud.
a. would be b. will be c. will d. should (أسبوط - الغنايم ٢٠١٨)

C Look at page (26). Listen and point.

انظر إلى صفحة (٢٦) في كتاب الطالب ثم استمع و أشر.

Practice Time

A Listen and repeat. Then practise with a partner

استمع وردد ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

If you take off your jacket, you'll be cold.

1 If I forget my homework, I'll be nervous.

I/forget my homework/nervous



2 If she her favourite pencil, she'll be sad.

she/lose her favourite pencil/sad



3 If he , he'll be happy.

he/get a good mark/happy



Unit 10

4 If you fall off your chair, you

you/fall off your chair/embarrassed



5 If she goes to bed late, she

she/go to bed late/tired



6 If they win a prize, they proud.

they/win a prize/proud



7 If ,
I'll be disappointed.

I/make a mistake/disappointed



8 If we
the fan, we'll be hot.

we/turn off the fan/hot



B Look at page (26). Practise with a partner.

انظر الى الصورة صفحة (٢٦) في كتاب الطالب ثم تدرب مع زميلك.

General Exercises

Focus Time & Practice Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- If I forget my homework, I'll be
a. proud b. tired c. happy d. nervous
- If you get a good mark, you happy. (السرس ٢٠١٦)
a. are b. could be c. were d. will be
- My parents were of me because I got high marks.
a. happy b. proud c. sad d. disappointed (القلبية - غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠١٨)
- If she lunch, she'll be hungry.
a. skip b. skips c. skipped d. skipping (أسيرط - منفاروط ٢٠١٨ / بنى سريف ٢٠١٦ / مطروح ٢٠١٧)
- If I fall off my chair, I'll feel (الاسماعيلية ٢٠١٧)
a. happy b. embarrassed c. well d. good
- If you off the jacket, you will feel cold.
a. take b. takes c. took d. taken
- SB May I a pencil? - Sure, here you are.
a. make b. lose c. borrow d. lend
- You'll be proud if you a prize.
a. win b. won c. to win d. wins

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- nervous - proud - tired - drink (القلبية - بنها ٢٠١٨)
- win - made - get - lose
- window - hungry - door - chair
- in - on - off - disappointed
- Where - May - Why - How

Unit 10

3 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences :

"At school"

أجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

1. skip - **Do** - lunch - ever - you ? (أكثر الشيخ ٢٠١٨ / الوادي الجديد ٢٠١٥)

2. she - **If she** - her chair, - falls off - embarrassed - 'll be.

5 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. do you ever win a prize, amir ? (المنيا ٢٠١٧)

2. How did Ali go to paris

Writing Skills

★ اتقن مهارة الكتابة عن طريق :

Writing skills . في نهاية كل وحدة التي
تمكنك من تكوين وترتيب الجمل ومهارة الكتابة .

How to write . تمكنك من مهارة الكتابة
بطريقة مبتكرة في نهاية كل وحدة .



Reading & Your Time

SB pages 29&30 WB pages 29&30



Key Vocabulary

website	موقع إلكتروني
fan	معجب / مشجع
remote control	جهاز التحكم عن بُعد
broadcasting	البث التلفزيوني
satellite	قمر صناعي
the moon	القمر

Active Vocabulary

history	تاريخ
computer	حاسب آلي
electric	كهربائي
video	فيديو
game	لعبة
public	عام
internet	الإنترنت
percent (%)	بالمائة (%)
thousand	ألف
sale	عرض
first	أول
find out	يكشف

لاحظ

- يستخدم حرف الجر (on) قبل كلمة (the moon) :
- Walk on the moon.
- يمشي على سطح القمر.
- يستخدم حرف الجر (for) بمعنى للـ :
- This website is for TV fans.

لاحظ

- يعرض للبيع * go on sale
- يستخدم حرف الجر (in) قبل الألوان :
- in black and white.
- أبيض وأسود.
- بالألوان .
- in colour.
- يعرف عن * know about

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular Verbs		Irregular Verbs	
Present مضارع	Past ماضي	Present مضارع	Past ماضي
launch يطلق (قمر صناعي)	launched	find out يكتشف	found out
invent يخترع/يبتكر	invented	begin يبدأ	began
walk يمشي	walked	know يعرف	knew

Unit 10

Appliances

- Television with remote control
- electric computer

أجهزة

- التليفزيون الذى يعمل بنظام التحكم عن بُعد.
- الكمبيوتر الكهربائى

New places & people

- Neil Armstrong
- Nile Sat 101
- John Atanasoff
- Clifford Berry

- Nolan Bushnell
- California

أماكن وأشخاص جدد

أماكن وأشخاص قد لا تكون مرت على الطالب من قبل
«نيل أرمسترونج» هو أول رائد فضاء أمريكى يمشى على سطح القمر.
«نابل سات ١٠١» أول قمر صناعى مصرى.
«جون أتاناسوف» قام بتصميم أول كمبيوتر إلكترونى فى العالم.
«كليفورد بيرى» ساعد أتاناسوف فى تصميم أول كمبيوتر إلكترونى فى العالم.
«نولان بوشنل» اخترع أول لعبة فيديو.
«كاليفورنيا» هى إحدى الولايات الأمريكية.

Exercise

on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- This website is for TV (القاهرة - شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠١٨)
a. fins b. fans c. fats d. fees
- Nile Sat 101 is an Egyptian (المنوفية ٢٠١٧)
a. Remote b. Satellite c. Broadcasting d. Website
- The first televisions with remote control went on in 1956. (الإسكندرية ٢٠١٥)
a. public b. sale c. electric d. moon
- I like to play games on the
a. TV b. radio c. computer d. satellite
- We're going to a new satellite next month.
a. skip b. launch c. lose d. forget
- Do you know about the of TV ?
a. control b. history c. game d. percent
- The first began in 1960.
a. abroad b. board c. broadcasting d. aboard
- The first TV was black and white.
a. on b. at c. in d. of

Reading Time

Reading Time

SB page 29

The History of TV

Introduction : مقدمة

"The History of TV" is a passage about the history of TV and the beginning of public broadcasting in Egypt.

«تاريخ التليفزيون» هى مقرة عن تاريخ التليفزيون و بداية البث العام فى مصر.

Main Points : النقاط الرئيسية

In 1939 : the first televisions went on sale.

In 1956 : the first televisions with remote control went on sale.

In 1960 : public broadcasting began in Egypt. It was in black and white.

A Listen and read along.

استمع واقرأ.

The History of TV

This website⁽¹⁾ is for TV fans⁽²⁾. Do you like TV ? How much do you know about the history of TV? Read this and find out!



1939

The first televisions go on sale.



1956

The first televisions with remote control⁽³⁾ go on sale⁽⁴⁾.



1960

Public broadcasting⁽⁵⁾ begins in Egypt. It is in black and white.

Check Vocabulary

- موقع إلكترونى
- معجبين / مشجعين
- جهاز التحكم عن بعد
- تم عرضه
- البث التليفزيونى
- قمر صناعى
- أطلق



1969

720 million people watch Neil Armstrong walk on the moon.



1975

Colour broadcasting begins in Egypt.



1998

The first Egyptian Satellite⁽⁶⁾ (Nile Sat 101) was launched⁽⁷⁾.

B Listen and circle True or False.

- 720 million people watched Neil Armstrong walk on the moon in 1969.
- Public broadcasting began in Egypt in 1960.
- Public broadcasting was in colour in 1998.
- The Egyptian Satellite (Nile Sat 102) was launched in 1998.

True False
True False
True False
True False

C Read the question. Write the answer.

- When did colour broadcasting begin?
Colour broadcasting began in Egypt in 1975.
- What did Neil Armstrong do?
Neil Armstrong walked on the moon in 1969.
- When did the first televisions with remote control go on sale?
The first televisions with remote control went on sale in 1956.
- What happened in 1998?
The first Egyptian Satellite (Nile Sat 101) was launched in 1998.

Hey, computer fans!

WB page 29

Introduction : مقدمة

"Hey, computer fans" is a passage about the history of computer in the past.

"هبي الكمبيوتر" هي فقرة عن تاريخ الكمبيوتر في الماضي.

Main Points : نقاط رئيسية

- In 1940, John Atanasoff and Clifford Berry built the first electric computer.
- In 1971, Nolan Bushnell invented the first video game.
- In 1995, 14 million people used the internet.
- In 1999, 40 percent of American homes had a computer.

اقرأ القطعة صفحة workbook كتاب المعاصر.

Your Time**A Listen and answer the questions.**

استمع إلى الأسئلة ثم أجب عليها من خلال معرفتك.

- If you skip breakfast tomorrow, will you be hungry?
- If you forget your homework tomorrow, will you be proud?
- If you go to bed at 11:00 tonight, will you be tired tomorrow?
- If you get a good mark today, will you be disappointed?

B Write four feelings. Ask your classmates. Write their names and circle Yes or No.

If you win a prize, will you be embarrassed?

	Feeling	Name	Yes / No
1. win a prize			Yes No
2. go to bed late			Yes No
3. get a good mark			Yes No
4. make a mistake			Yes No

C Review. Read and write the answers.

- Do you ever skip lunch?
- Were you happy yesterday?
- Did you go to bed late last night?
- How often do you fall off your chair?

General Exercises

Reading & Your Time

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- In 1956, the first televisions with _____ control went on sale.
a. satellite b. remote c. broadcast d. computer
(القليوية - بينها ٢٠١٨)
- Egypt launched a _____ in 1998.
a. moon b. television c. star d. satellite
(شمال سيناء ٢٠١٧)
- If you take off your jacket, you _____ be cold.
a. was b. is c. were d. will
(أبرسعيد ٢٠١٧)
- She never _____ lunch, so she doesn't feel hungry.
a. eats b. cooks c. skips d. does
(المنيا ٢٠١٦)
- How _____ websites were there in 1995?
a. often b. much c. many d. long
- What _____ in 1998?
a. happened b. happens c. will happen d. happening
- _____ broadcasting was in color in 1960.
a. Sale b. Public c. Control d. Electric
- _____ you go to bed late last night?
a. Do b. Does c. Did d. Have

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- win - go - bed - make ()
- with - begin - in - on ()
- skip - door - window - chair ()
- nervous - cold - Saturday - proud ()
- How - Did - Were - Do ()

General Exercises

3 Read the passage and answer the questions:

(السرط ٢٠١٦)

This is a story about my grandmother. Her name is Nan. She was born in 1930 in Cairo. When she was little, she could listen to music, but she couldn't watch TV. Why couldn't she watch TV? Because TVs didn't go on sale until 1939 and public broadcasting began in Egypt in 1960. Grandma Nan liked listening to music. But she really liked watching TV. She watched her favourite shows with her brothers and sisters. She watched Neil Armstrong walk on the moon in 1969. All the shows were in black and white. They couldn't watch TV in colour until, colour broadcasting began in 1975.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Neil Armstrong walked on the _____.
a. stars b. moon c. sky d. road
- TVs didn't go on sale until _____.
a. 1939 b. 1993 c. 1931 d. 1991

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When was grandmother Nan born?

4. What could grandmother do when she was little?

4 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. televisions - the first - go - on sale - When - did?

2. broadcasting - Colour - in Egypt - began - in 1975.

5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. People watched Neil armstrong walk on the moon

2. yes, it s my new computer.

Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة



١. هذا الجزء يساعدك على كتابة بعض الجمل المقترحة التي تم دراستها بالمنهج



Study

Programmes	برامج
animals	music
football	English
basketball	food

Activities	أنشطة
see films	watch the news
play games	send emails

Inventions	اختراعات
television	computer

- The (أحد الاختراعات) is very important/useful.
The computer is very important.
- I like to (أحد الأنشطة) on (أحد البرامج).
I like to see films on TV.
- My father bought a new (أحد الاختراعات).
My father bought a new computer.
- I like programmes about (أحد البرامج).
I like programmes about animals.
- (أحد الأنشطة) like /likes to (فاعل).
My mother likes to watch the news.
- I will (أحد الأنشطة) tonight.
I will see a film tonight.



Try

بعد دراسة ما سبق حاول أن تكون جمل باستخدام التعبيرات السابقة.

The Word	Try to make a sentence
music	I like programmes about music.
play games	
computer	
television	



Answer

Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences :

"Television"

Writing Skill

٢. تعلم كيف تكون وترتب جمل وأسئلة.

١ الجمل الخبرية

- a - won - yesterday - prize - **She**.
- like - I - matches - on TV - football - watching.

فاعل	فعل	باقي الجملة
1		
2		

٢ الجمل الأمرية

- on - TV - watch - night - a school - **Don't**.
- forget - **Don't** - homework - your.

Don't	مصدر الفعل	باقي الجملة
1		
2		

٣ الجمل الاستفهامية

(أ) السؤال ب (كلمة استفهام .. ؟)

- you - were - afternoon - yesterday - **Where** ?
- did - **When** - colour - begin - broadcasting ?

كلمة الاستفهام	فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة
1				
2				

(ب) السؤال ب (هل .. ؟)

- you - match - watch - football - the - **Did** ?
- you - **Were** - yesterday - happy ?

فعل مساعد	فاعل	فعل أساسي	باقي الجملة
1			
2			

لمزيد من التدريبات El Moasser student's writing skill في نهاية كتاب الشرح

Television project worksheet

ورقة بحثية عن التلفزيون



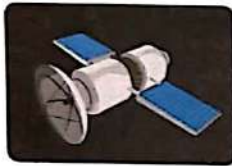
Objectives الأهداف

Mention the history of Television :

اذكر ما تعرف عن تاريخ التلفزيون:

Get started استعد

1. When was the first Egyptian satellite (Nile Sat 101) launched ?
١. متى تم اطلاق أول قمر صناعي مصري
(نيل سات ١٠١) ؟



2. When did the first Television go on sale ?
٢. متى تم عرض أول تلفزيون للبيع ؟



Project المشروع

Make a poster about the history of television.

قم بعمل ملصق (بوستر) عن تاريخ التلفزيون.

Project resources مصادر المشروع

* <https://www.ekb.eg>

- بنك المعرفة المصري

* The internet الإنترنت

* Student's books of different subjects الكتب المدرسية للمواد المختلفة

Your Poster الملصق الخاص بك

Self Assessment Activity

التقييم الذاتي



If you got you need to revise the unit again on the next page.
قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على غير جيد
قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

At the end of this unit, I will be able to
في نهاية هذه الوحدة، سأكون قادرًا على

1 I can say these words أستطيع نطق الكلمات الآتية

- | | |
|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> skip lunch | <input type="checkbox"/> go to bed late |
| <input type="checkbox"/> forget homework | <input type="checkbox"/> lose my pencil |
| <input type="checkbox"/> turn off a fan | <input type="checkbox"/> fall off a chair |
| <input type="checkbox"/> programme | <input type="checkbox"/> computer |

2 I can read and write these sentences أستطيع قراءة وكتابة الجمل الآتية

- | |
|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> I'm watching a programme about animals. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Do you ever skip lunch ? |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Public broadcasting began in black and white. |
| <input type="checkbox"/> In 1939, the first televisions went on sale. |

Teacher's notes ملاحظات المعلم

Parent's notes ملاحظات ولي الأمر

لمزيد من التدريبات جزء المتابعة اليومية في نهاية كتاب الشرح

Revision

Unit



هذا الجزء يساعدك على تنمية مهارات التعامل مع الورقة الامتحانية

* كيفية التعامل مع السؤال الاول والثاني في ورقة الامتحان

1 Conversation Time

Sarah : Where were you yesterday afternoon ?

Noha : At Mona's house. We were watching TV.

Sarah : What was on ?

Noha : A programme⁽¹⁾ about animals in Africa.

Sarah : Aw, I missed⁽²⁾ it. Was it good ?

Noha : Yeah, it was. The gorillas⁽³⁾ were really cool.

Sarah : Did you watch the football match last night ?

Noha : No, my mum was watching the news. Besides⁽⁴⁾, I don't like watching football matches on TV.

Sarah : Me, neither⁽⁵⁾. It's not as fun as watching a real⁽⁶⁾ game.

Noha : Hey! There's a good film on tonight. Do you want to come over⁽⁷⁾ ?

Sarah : I can't. My mum won't let me watch TV on a school night.

Noha : Too bad. Oh! There's the bell. Time for class !

2 Word Time

* كيفية التعامل مع السؤال الثالث والرابع والخامس في ورقة الامتحان.

skip lunch	يفوت وجبة الغداء	fall off a chair	يسقط من على الكرسي
forget homework	ينسى الواجب المدرسي	get a good mark	يحصل على درجة جيدة
go to bed late	يذهب للفرش متأخرا	lose my pencil	أفقد قلمي الرصاص

Revision

make a mistake	يخطئ / يرتكب خطأ	win a prize	يفوز بجائزة
take off my jacket	أخلع جاكتي	turn off the fan	يطفى المروحة

3 Focus Time & Practice Time

First conditional clause with "If" : حالة (If) الشرطية الأولى :

If	Present Simple Tense	Future Simple Tense
إذا / لو	زمن المضارع البسيط	زمن المستقبل البسيط
		(will + inf. المصدر)

* If I forget my homework, I'll be nervous.

4 Difficult questions in the exam paper with model answers.

الأسئلة التي قد تكون صعبة خاصة بالوحدة في الورقة الامتحانية بإجاباتها النموذجية

1 Important sentences: جمل هامة

1. The first televisions went on sale in 1939.
2. The first televisions with remote control went on sale in 1956.
3. Public broadcasting began in Egypt in black and white in 1960.
4. Do you ever skip lunch ?
5. How often do you fall off your chair ?
6. She'll be very proud.

2 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences :

"The computer"

The computer is very important. I like playing computer games. I study my lessons on my computer. I like sending emails to my friends. I use it daily. I look for information using the internet. I send messages to my friends.

Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences.

1. Samy • Where you ? yesterday • Hi were afternoon
Hi, Samy. Where were you yesterday afternoon?
2. house • watching Mona's We were at • TV
At Mona's house. We were watching TV.
3. ? on What was
What was on?
4. animals programme about A • Africa in
A programme about animals in Africa.
5. I missed Aw • it •
Aw, I missed it.
6. match last football watch Did ? you night the
Did you watch the last football match last night?
7. mum No watching my • the news • was
No, I wasn't watching the news. Mum was watching my favourite programme.
8. TV • watching football on don't matches I like • Besides
I like watching football on TV. Besides, I don't like watching matches.
9. • Me fun as not It's neither • real a game • watching
It's not as fun as real football. I'm watching a game.



Unit 10

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I go to bed late.
a. go b. take c. lose d. have
2. I take off my jacket.
a. turn b. take c. fall d. play
3. I fall off my chair.
a. go b. fall c. get d. have
4. I turn off the fan.
a. get b. lose c. turn d. have
5. I lose my favourite pencil.
a. lose b. turn c. go d. visit
6. I get a good mark.
a. fall b. get c. go d. drink
7. I skip lunch.
a. skip b. fall c. do d. play
8. I forget my homework.
a. forget b. turn c. win d. play
9. I make a mistake.
a. lose b. fall c. make d. visit
10. I win a prize.
a. win b. forget c. make d. turn

B. Match and write.

- | | | | |
|-----------|----|----------|--------------------|
| 1. win | my | mistake | win a prize |
| 2. forget | a | prize | forget my homework |
| 3. make | a | homework | make a mistake |
| 4. skip | a | lunch | skip lunch |

A. Number the pictures.



- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. embarrassed | 2. happy |
| 3. hungry | 4. disappointed |
| 5. cold | 6. tired |
| 7. proud | 8. sad |
| 9. nervous | 10. hot |

B. Read and match.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. If you go to bed late, | you'll be proud. |
| 2. If she gets a good mark, | you'll be tired. |
| | she'll be happy. |
| | she'll be disappointed. |

A. Read and write.

1. If you skip lunch, you'll be hungry.
2. If we win a prize, we'll be proud.
3. If you forget your homework, you'll be nervous.
4. If we make a mistake, we'll be disappointed.
5. If you lose your favourite pencil, you'll be sad.

B. Look and write.



A. Read.

Hey computer fans!
How much do you know about the history of computers? Read this and find out!

1940 John Atanasoff and Clifford Berry built the first electric computer.	1971 Nolan Bushnell invents the first video game.	1975 The first computer shop opens in California.
1981 The first email computer for homes goes on sale.	1984 13 percent of American homes have a computer.	1995 14 million people use the Internet. There are 100 thousand websites.
	1999 40 percent of American homes have a computer.	

B. Read the question. Write the answer.

- What went on sale in 1981?
The first small computer for homes went on sale.
- What percent of American homes had a computer in 1984?
In 1984, 13 percent of American homes had a computer.
- How many websites were there in 1995?
There were 100 thousand websites.
- Where did the first computer shop open?
The first computer shop opened in California.

C. Read and write.

- In 1999, 40 percent of American homes had a computer.
- Nolan Bushnell invented the first video game in 1971.
- 14 million people used the Internet in 1995.
- In 1940, John Atanasoff and Clifford Berry built the first electric computer.

A. Write sentences. Use the phrases in the boxes.
Answers will vary.

- | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| skip breakfast | find money | wear a wig |
| go to the dentist | lose my favourite shirt | go to bed late |
- If I _____
 - _____
 - _____
 - _____
 - _____
 - _____

B. Read the question. Write the answer.
Answers will vary.

- When do you feel proud?
- When do you feel cold?
- When do you feel nervous?

C. Write and draw.

- Where were you on Saturday?
- What were you doing?



Collected from Governorates & Directorates Examinations
اختبار على الوحدة مجمع من امتحانات المحافظات والإدارات

A Listening

1 Listen and circle : استمع إلى معلمك و ضع دائرة

- a. At Mona's house.
b. At my uncle's house.
- a. I was there for two days.
b. I was there for a week.
- a. Where were you on Sunday?
b. Where were you on Saturday?
- a. How do you go to school?
b. When do you go to school?

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

(الراوى الجديد ٢٠١٥)

(سراج ٢٠١٥)

(مطروح ٢٠١٦)

(مطروح ٢٠١٤)

2 Listen and complete : استمع إلى معلمك و أكمل

- Reem : Where were you yesterday (1) _____?
- Samira : At Amal's (2) _____. We were watching a programme about animals.
- Reem : Aw, I missed it. Was it (3) _____?
- Samira : Yeah, it was. The gorillas were really (4) _____.
- Reem : Did you watch the football match last night?
- Samira : No, my mum was watching the news. (الراوى الجديد ٢٠١٥)

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- It is cold, _____ off the fan, please.
a. turn b. play c. take d. make
(الدقهلية - اجا ٢٠١٨)
- If she _____ lunch, she'll be hungry. (٢٠١٦ بنى سوف / مطروح ٢٠١٧)
a. skip b. skips c. skipped d. skipping
- He fell _____ the chair. (الغربية - السحلة ٢٠١٩)
a. of b. off c. out d. on

4. She happy if she gets high marks.
a. is b. was c. will d. will be (أسويط ٢٠١٥)
5. The first small computer for home went on in 1981.
a. sell b. launch c. sale d. broadcasting (مطروح ٢٠١٥)
6. What if you forget your homework?
a. happened b. happen c. will happen d. happening (القليوبية ٢٠١٧)
7. If you get bad marks, you'll feel
a. disappointed b. good c. proud d. happy (الدفيلية - طلخا ٢٠١٨)
8. Did you the football match last night?
a. speak b. watch c. talk d. eat (فتا ٢٠١٥)

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one :

1. black - white - red - box (جنوب سيناء - الطور ٢٠١٨)
2. skip - get - win - jacket (المنيا ٢٠١٥)
3. March - Sunday - Monday - Friday (القاهرة ٢٠١٧)
4. fall - embarrassed - hungry - angry (الإسماعيلية ٢٠١٦)
5. programme - match - news - class (مطروح ٢٠١٥)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions :

Hello, I'm Ali. Last night, I didn't have much homework because I usually have a little homework on Monday. So my mother let me watch TV. There was a good programme on, but my father was watching a football match. I don't like watching football matches on TV. I went to Kareem's house to watch the programme. It was a good programme about animals in Africa. The tigers were really fast. They were running after a deer.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Mother let Ali watch TV on
a. Monday b. Tuesday c. Thursday d. Sunday
2. Ali watched the programme at
a. school b. home c. Kareem's house d. cinema

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why did Ali's mother let him watch TV on Monday ?
4. What was Ali's father watching on TV ?

C Writing

6 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences :

"The history of TV"

جواب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

1. Egypt - in 1960 - in - broadcasting - began - Public. (الشرقية ٢٠١٧)
2. yesterday - Did - TV - you - watch ? (القاهرة ٢٠١٧)

8 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. do you ever win a prize, Amir (المنيا ٢٠١٧)
2. How did adel go to school last Monday (القليوبية ٢٠١٤)

Test 10 on Unit 10

يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه
تلويحه

A Listening

1 Listen and circle : استمع إلى معلمك و ضع دائرة

1. a. No, I couldn't.
- b. No, I didn't.

2. a. I will be happy.
- b. I will be tired.

3. SB a. What will happen if you get a high mark?
- b. What will happen if you make a mistake?

4. a. When will you go to school?
- b. How will you go to school?

2 Listen and complete : استمع إلى معلمك و أكمل

Sarah : Did you (1) the football match last night?

Noha : No, my mum was (2) the news. Besides, I don't like watching football matches on TV.

Sarah : Me, neither. It's not as (3) as watching a real game.

Noha : Hey! There's a good film on tonight. Do you want to (4) over?

Sarah : I can't. My mum won't let me watch TV on a school night.

Noha : Too bad. Oh! There's the bell. Time for class!

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It's not as as watching a real game.
a. funny b. fun c. sad d. hard
2. If I a high mark, I'll be happy.
a. get b. gets c. got d. will get

Tests on Unit 10

3. It's too hot , turn the fan, please.
a. under b. off c. over d. on
4. If he loses his favourite pencil, he be sad.
a. would b. 's c. 'll d. 're
5. If he goes to bed , he'll be tired.
a. early b. late c. happily d. quickly
6. It's too hot, I'll my jacket.
a. put on b. take off c. turn off d. lose
7. May I your book ?
a. eat b. find c. borrow d. win
8. I don't like matches on TV.
a. watching b. watch c. watched d. watches

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one :

1. radio - computer - history - video (.....)
2. ship - plane - car - lunch (.....)
3. nervous - disappointed - happy - win (.....)
4. make - rainy - skip - lose (.....)
5. Amira - Ahmed - Noha - Sara (.....)

5 SB Read the passage and answer the questions:

Noha likes reading. She is reading a book about TV. There is some information about the history of TV. In 1939, the first televisions went on sale. Then in 1956, the first televisions with remote control went on sale. By 1960, public broadcasting began in Egypt. It was in black and white. Colour broadcasting began in Egypt in 1975. Noha was happy to know all about TVs.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In , the first televisions with remote control went on sale.
a. 1939 b. 1956 c. 1960 d. 1961
2. The public broadcasting in Egypt in 1960.
a. played b. fell c. were d. began

Unit 10

B. Answer the following questions:

- Who likes reading ?
- When did the first televisions go on sale ?

C Writing

6 Write an email of SEVEN sentences :

Write an email to your friend, Said to tell him about your favourite programme. Your name is Amir. Your email address is amir@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is said@gmail.com.

To :
From :
Subject :

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

- SB fell - chair - his - He - off.
- did - When - skip - you - lunch ?

8 Punctuate the following sentences :

- Heba wants to visit hala in aswan.
- What s your father's job

General Revision

On Units 9 and 10

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات 9 و 10

مراجعة عامة على Unit 9 في ورقة واحدة

3. Language Focus	2. Vocabulary	1. Conversation
1. Wh-question with "When": When + did + fاعل + inf. الفعل - تستخدم "When" بمعنى (متى) في السؤال عن وقت فعل شيء ما في الماضي. - When did you go to Paris ? - I went in May.	عواصم و مدن Rome Cairo Paris Tokyo London New York City Hong Kong Honolulu San Francisco Seoul مدينة روما (عاصمة إيطاليا) مدينة القاهرة (عاصمة جمهورية مصر العربية) مدينة باريس (عاصمة فرنسا) مدينة طوكيو (عاصمة اليابان) مدينة لندن (عاصمة إنجلترا) مدينة نيويورك (في أمريكا) هونغ كونج (مدينة في الصين) هونولولو (عاصمة ولاية هاواي) سان فرانسيسكو (مدينة في ولاية كاليفورنيا الأمريكية) مدينة سول (عاصمة كوريا الجنوبية)	Laila : Captain Marwa, we'd like to interview you for our school newspaper. Could we ask you a few questions ? Pilot : Sure. Go ahead. Laila : How many female pilots work for your airline? Pilot : I think one third of the pilots are female. Laila : Do you ever fly abroad ? Pilot : Yes. I have an overseas flight once a month. Rammy : Do you fly the plane by yourself ? Pilot : No. I always have a copilot. Rammy : Do you like being a pilot ? Pilot : Yes, very much! Laila : Thanks for your time, Captain Marwa. Pilot : My pleasure.

Mini Test on Unit 9

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- How many female work for your airline?
a. teachers b. pilots
c. doctors d. pupils
- Could we ask you questions?
a. a few b. a little c. much d. a lot
- is the capital of France.
a. Tokyo b. Paris c. Rome d. London
- is the "Big Apple".
a. London b. Seoul
c. New York City d. Paris
- were you in San Francisco?
- For three months.
a. How long b. When
c. How much d. How many
- He went to Tokyo June.
a. on b. in c. at d. from

7. Don't to shop at Macy's!

- a. forget b. forgot
c. to forget d. forgets

8. Captain Hany flies abroad a month.

- a. one b. two c. twice d. three

2 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. you - fly - Do - abroad - ever?

2. for - your - Thanks - time.

1. Conversation	2. Vocabulary	3. Language Focus
<p>Sarah : Where were you yesterday afternoon?</p> <p>Noha : At Mona's house. We were watching TV.</p> <p>Sarah : What was on?</p> <p>Noha : A programme about animals in Africa.</p> <p>Sarah : Aw! I missed it. Was it good?</p> <p>Noha : Yeah, it was. The gorillas were really cool.</p> <p>Sarah : Did you watch the football match last night?</p> <p>Noha : No, my mum was watching the news. Besides, I don't like watching football matches on TV.</p> <p>Sarah : Me, neither. It's not as fun as watching a real game.</p> <p>Noha : Hey! There's a good film on tonight. Do you want to come over?</p> <p>Sarah : I can't. My mum won't let me watch TV on a school night.</p> <p>Noha : Too bad. Oh! There's the bell. Time for class!</p>	<p>Aفعال الحركة</p> <p>skip lunch يتغيب عن / يترك الغداء forget homework ينسى الواجب المدرسي go to bed late يذهب للفراش متأخراً make a mistake يخطئ / يرتكب خطأ take off my jacket أخلع الجاكيت الخاص بي fall off a chair يسقط من على الكرسي get a good mark يحصل على درجة جيدة lose my favourite pencil أفقد قلمي الرصاص المفضل win a prize يغزى بجائزة turn off the fan يطلق المروحة</p>	<p>* First conditional clause with (if)</p> <p>حالة (if) الشرطية الأولى</p> <p>If Present Simple Tense , Future Simple Tense إذا/ لو زمن المضارع البسيط زمن المستقبل البسيط (will + inf. المصدر)</p> <p>- If you get a good mark, you'll be proud.</p> <p>Future Simple Tense if Present Simple Tense زمن المستقبل البسيط if زمن المضارع البسيط</p> <p>- I'll be nervous if I forget my homework.</p> <p>لاحظ أن حالة (if) الشرطية الأولى تستخدم للتعبير عن احتمال حدوث شيء في المستقبل.</p> <p>* Adjectives الصفات</p> <p>- Ahmed is a clever boy. الصفة تصف الاسم وتأتي قبله.</p> <p>- Hend was tired. "verb to be" بعد "verb to be"</p> <p>- Ramzy was sad because he got low marks.</p>

Mini Test on Unit 10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you the fan, you'll be hot.
a. turn off b. take off
c. fall off d. put on
2. If he lunch, he'll be hungry.
a. plays b. skips c. irons d. cleans
3. In 1969, Neil Armstrong on the moon.
a. went b. walked
c. began d. launched
4. This website is for TV
a. vans b. fans c. fins d. fees
5. If she to bed late, she will be tired.
a. go b. goes c. going d. went

6. If I get a prize, I be proud.
a. 'll b. 'd c. 've d. 'm
7. What will happen if she her bag?
a. forget b. forgot
c. will forget d. forgets
8. The first Egyptian Satellite (Nile Sat 101) in 1998.
a. launches b. was launched
c. launching d. launch

2 Write a paragraph of SEVEN sentences:

"Computers"

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review

Conversation Time

SB page 31

A Listen and circle the correct picture.

1

Mona : Hi, Kareem. Do you want some help?

Kareem : Sure! You can move the cello. Put it over there.

Mona : Beside the harp?

Kareem : No. Don't put it by the harp. Put it beside the drums.

Mona : Okay.

Kareem : Now put the harp behind the xylophone.



2

Woman : 122. What's the emergency?

Boy : There's a wild animal in my garden! I think it's a bear.

Woman : A bear?

Boy : No, it isn't a bear. I think it's a deer!

Woman : A kangaroo?

Boy : No, a deer. Oh! There are two animals! A deer and a bear!

Woman : Okay. I'm sending a police officer now.



A Listen and circle the correct picture.

1

Mona : Hi, Kareem. Do you want some help ?

Kareem : Sure! You can move the cello. Put it over there.

Mona : Beside the harp ?

Kareem : No. Don't put it by the harp. Put it beside the drums.

Mona : Okay.

Kareem : Now put the harp behind the xylophone.



2

Woman : 122. What's the emergency ?

Boy : There's a wild animal in my garden! I think it's a bear.

Woman : A bear ?

Boy : No, it isn't a bear. I think it's a deer!

Woman : A kangaroo ?

Boy : No, a deer. Oh! There are two animals! A deer and a bear!

Woman : Okay. I'm sending a police officer now.



3

Teacher : Hend, please come to the board.
Write the letter "P".

Hend : Okay.

Teacher : No, that's not a "P". That's a "b".
No, that's a "q".

Hend : I can't. It's too hard.

Teacher : Come on, Hend. Don't give up!

Hend : Okay. Hey! I can do it.

Teacher : Good work, Hend!



4

Boy : Captain Ahmed, could I interview you
for my school newspaper?

Pilot : Sure! Go ahead.

Boy : Do you fly the plane by yourself?

Pilot : No. I always have a copilot.

Boy : Do you enjoy being a pilot?

Pilot : Yes, I do.

Boy : Thanks for your time, Captain Ahmed.

Pilot : My pleasure.



5

Girl : Where were you last night?

Boy : I was at home watching TV.

Girl : What was on?

Boy : A programme about animals in Africa.
It was great!

Girl : Aw I missed it. Did you watch the
football match last night?

Boy : No. My mum was watching the news. I
went to bed.



B Listen and circle the correct answer.

1 **Kareem** : Put the bass over there, Mona.

Mona : Okay. Wow! This is heavy.

Kareem : Look out! There's a box!

Mona : Where? Behind me?

Kareem : No, by the window, in front of you!

Mona : Oh, there it is. Thanks, Kareem.

next to

behind

in front of

- 2 Woman : What's your name and address ?
 Ahmed : Ahmed Samy. 49 El Salam Street.
 Woman : Okay. Ahmed Samy at 99 El Salam Street.
 Oh! Sorry, you said 39 El Salam Street.
 Ahmed : No, it's 49 El Salam Street.
 Woman : Got it.

39 49 99

- 3 Teacher : Nora, please help me hand out the homework.
 Girl : Is it homework from Tuesday ?
 Teacher : No, it's homework from yesterday.
 Girl : But yesterday was Saturday.
 Teacher : Oh yes, you're right. It's homework from Thursday.

Tuesday Yesterday Thursday

- 4 Boy : Captain Marwa, do you ever fly abroad ?
 Pilot : Yes, I have an overseas flight once a month.
 Boy : So you fly to Hong Kong once a month ?
 Pilot : Oh, I never fly to Hong Kong. I fly to Cairo once a month.

Cairo Seoul Hong Kong

A Listen and read along. Then number the pictures.

**PUPPETS' DAILY
January Music Special**

- 1 Reporter : You play the flute very well, Sokkara.

Sokkara : Thank you. When I was little, I couldn't play well. But practice makes perfect!



Reporter : You went to Alexandria, right ?

Sokkara : Yes, I did. I went in December.

Reporter : How long were you there ?

Sokkara : I was there for two weeks. Alexandria is the most exciting city in the world! I had a good time.

- 2 Reporter : Did you go to Alexandria by yourself ?

Sokkara : No, I went with Sokkar and our orchestra. We gave our winter performance.



Reporter : Oh! Were there any soloists ?

Sokkara : I was the soloist on the flute. Sokkar was the soloist on the cymbals.

Reporter : How did he play the cymbals ?

Sokkara : He played the cymbals very loudly! It was funny.

3

Reporter : How many puppets are in your orchestra ?

Sokkara : Five.

Reporter : How often do you rehearse ?

Sokkara : We rehearse three times a week.



4

Reporter : Do you ever play the cello, Sokkara ?

Sokkara : No, I can't play the cello. It's too big.

Reporter : Do you ever play the trumpet ?

Sokkara : Yes ! I love playing the trumpet.

Reporter : What's your favourite kind of music ?

Sokkara : I like jazz. We're going to give a jazz performance on television in March.

Reporter : Sounds great! Thanks for your time, Sokkara.

Sokkara : My pleasure.



B Listen and read along. Then number the pictures.

PUPPETS' DAILY March Music Special

1

Reporter : Sokkar, I'd like to interview you for *Puppet's Daily* newspaper.

Sokkar : Wow! Okay.

Reporter : How often do you and Sokkara play abroad ?

Sokkar : Our orchestra plays abroad about six times a year. We went to Rome in February!

Reporter : How long were you there ?

Sokkar : I think we were there for one week. I don't remember. But the food was delicious!



2

Reporter : Did you give a performance in Rome ?

Sokkar : Well, yes. I was nervous and I fell off my chair. I was so embarrassed!

Reporter : What was Sokkara doing when you fell off your chair ?

Sokkar : She was playing the flute. She was the soloist. The performance was a hit.



3

Reporter : That's great! Let's talk about the cymbals now. You play the cymbals. Is it hard?

Sokkar : No, it's easy. I'll show you.

Reporter : You play the cymbals loudly, Sokkar!

Sokkar : Are you okay?

Reporter : My ears hurt.

Sokkar : I'm sorry!



4

Reporter : It's okay. So, are you going to perform in Cairo soon?

Sokkar : Yes! We're going to give a performance at the Cairo Theatre. It will be on TV, too!



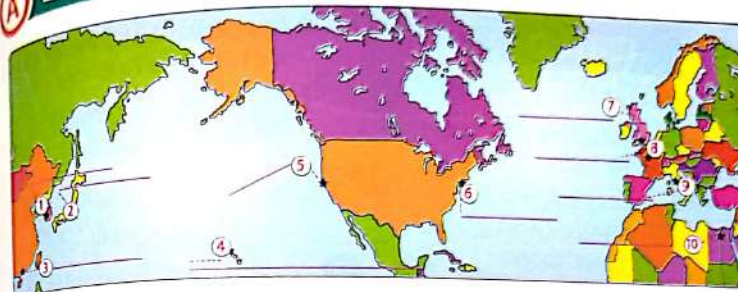
Reporter : Oh, yes, I remember now. I'm going to buy a ticket.

Sokkar : It's free!

Reporter : Great! Thanks for your time, Sokkar.

Sokkar : You're welcome.

A Look and write.



B Read and complete the puzzle.

Across →

1. I'm not hungry. I'm going to lunch.



2. They played the loudly.



3. When he was little, he could a ball.



4. If I my favourite pencil, I'll be sad.



Down ↓

5. He can cut out a



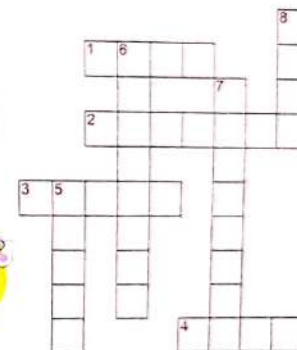
6. He played the electric well.



7. She was talking on the phone when the hopped by.



8. She was blowing a bubble when two ran by.



نصوص استماع كتاب الشرح

UNIT (6)

1 Listen and complete : page 17

Maha : What are you doing, Heba ?

Heba : I am helping Mr Khaled clean up the music room.

Maha : Can I help you ?

Heba : Sure. You can move the bass.

Maha : Where can I put it ?

Heba : Over there, by the window.

* Listen and complete : page 18

Kareem : What are you doing, Mona ?

Mona : I am cleaning up the music room.

Kareem : Can I help you ?

Mona : Sure. Can you put the bass by the window ?

Kareem : Ugh! It is so heavy.

Mona : Look out, Kareem ! There is a box behind you.

Test (1) on Unit (6)

1 Listen and circle : page 51

1. What did you play yesterday ? We played the drums.

2. How does he play the recorder ? He plays the recorder slowly.
3. Are you the soloist of the chorus ? Yes, I am.
4. How did she play the cello ? She played it well.

2 Listen and complete :

Toka : Do you need some help ?

Roqia : Sure. You can put these toys in the toy box.

Toka : Where is the toy box ?

Roqia : It's behind you, over there.

Toka : Thanks.

Roqia : You're welcome.

Test (2) on Unit (6)

1 Listen and circle : page 54

1. How does he play the piano ? He plays the piano slowly.
2. Can I help you ? Sure. You can move the bass.
3. Can you take a message ? - Sure.
4. What are you doing ? - I'm helping Mr Khaled.

2 Listen and complete :

Daddy : When was the spring performance ?

Huda : It was last Friday.

Daddy : Who sang songs ?
Huda : Amira was the soloist.
Daddy : What did the orchestra perform ?
Huda : They performed music by Beethoven.

UNIT (7)

Listen and complete : Page 63

Operator : 122. What's the emergency ?

Adel : Help! There's something in my garden.

Operator : What is it ?

Adel : I think it is a wild animal.

Operator : What's your name and address ?

Adel : Adel Fawzy. 51 Ahmed Samy Street.

1 Listen and circle : Page 64

1. What should I do ? Stay calm.
2. What is it ? I think there is a wild animal in my garden.
3. What's your name and address ? Ali Samy. 20 Ramses Street.
4. Are your parents home ? No, they aren't.

1 Listen and complete : Page 87

Teacher : I am going to tell you about a famous animal.

Student : What is the name of that animal ?

Teacher : The American black bear.

Student : What does it eat ?

Teacher : It eats fruits.

Student : Please sir, tell me some more facts.

Test (3) on Unit (7)

1 Listen and circle : Page 98

1. What's your name and address ? Azza Hassan, 22 El-Salam Street.
2. What was he doing yesterday ? He was cooking lunch.
3. What's your favourite animal ? The giraffe.
4. Did she feed the birds ? Yes, she did.

2 Listen and complete :

Officer : 122. What's the emergency ?

Adel : Help! There's something in my garden.

Officer : What is it ?

Adel : I think it's a wild animal.

Officer : What's your name and address ?

Adel : Adel Ahmed. 49 El-Salam Street.

Test (4) on Unit (7)

1 Listen and circle : Page 101

1. What is the panda's favourite food?
The panda's favourite food is bamboo.
2. Did they go to the cinema?
No, they went to the zoo.
3. How many giant pandas are alive today?
Around 700 to 1000 pandas are alive today.
4. What were you doing when the panda walked by?
I was reading.

2 Listen and complete :

- Ramy : Where did you go yesterday?
Mona : I went to the zoo.
Ramy : How did you go there?
Mona : On foot.
Ramy : What did you see there?
Mona : I saw a lot of animals.

UNIT (8)

*** Listen and circle :** Page 111

1. Can you write the letter "F"?
I'm sorry, Miss Sokkara.
2. Can you draw a kite?
Yes, I can. It's too easy.
3. Can you write the letter (d) on the board?
No, I can't. It's too hard.

4. What did you get?
I got a hundred.

1 Listen and complete : Page 112

- Miss Dina : Mona, please come to the front. Write the letter (B) on the board.
Mona : I don't know how. I'm sorry.
Miss Dina : Why can't you do it?
Mona : Because it's too hard.
Miss Dina : Let me show you how. It's easy. Don't give up. Can you write it now?
Mona : Hey! I can do it.

Test (5) on Unit (8)

1 Listen and circle : Page 146

1. Where were you?
We were at school.
2. Could you say the alphabet when you were little?
Yes, I could.
3. What could you do when you were five?
I could count to ten.
4. Could she count to ten?
No, she couldn't.

2 Listen and complete :

- Noha : I'm sorry, I don't know how to write the letter "m".

UNIT (9)

1 Listen and circle : Page 164

1. Do you like being a teacher?
No, I like being a pilot.
2. How many female pilots work for your airline?
I think one third of the pilots are female.
3. Do you like being a pilot?
Yes, I do.
4. How often does she fly abroad?
She flies abroad three times a month.

2 Listen and complete :

- Marwa : Good morning, I'm Captain Marwa.
Adel : Good morning, could we interview you for our newspaper?
Marwa : Sure. Go ahead.
Adel : How many female pilots work for your airline?
Marwa : I think one third of the pilots.
Adel : Thank you for your time.

Test (7) on Unit (9)

1 Listen and circle : Page 194

1. When did he go to Italy?
He went in May.
2. Where is she from?
She is from Paris.

Teacher : Can I show you how?
It is easy.

Noha : No, it's too hard.

Teacher : Come on.
Don't give up.

Noha : Is it right?

Teacher : Good work, Noha.

Test (6) on Unit (8)

1 Listen and circle : Page 149

1. What could she do when she was little?
When she was little, she could spell a word.
2. Who is Adam?
Adam is Kareem's friend from school.
3. How are you?
Fine, thanks.
4. Could Ali swim when he was little?
Yes, he could.

2 Listen and complete :

- Adam : Hi, how are you?
Ahmed : I'm fine, thanks.
Adam : Last Saturday, I visited Miss Dina. Do you remember her?
Ahmed : Yes, she was our kindergarten teacher.
Adam : Do you write to her?
Ahmed : Yes, I do.

3. Do you like being a pilot?
Yes, I do.
4. How did he go to Hong Kong?
He went by plane.

2 Listen and complete :

- Laila : Could I ask you
a few questions?
- Captain Marwa : Sure. Go
ahead.
- Laila : Do you ever fly
abroad?
- Captain Marwa : Yes, Once
a month.
- Laila : Do you fly
the plane by
yourself?
- Captain Marwa : No, I always
have a copilot.

Test (8) on Unit (9)

1 Listen and circle : Page 197

1. Where is Omar from?
He is from Cairo.
2. How long were you there?
I was there for two days.
3. When did she go to Paris?
Last month.
4. How long did you stay there?
For a week.

2 Listen and complete :

Basmala : Where did you go,
Soha?

Soha : I went to New York
City.

Basmala : When did you go
there?

Soha : I went in January.

Basmala : How long were you
there?

Soha : I was there for 3
weeks.

UNIT (10)

1 Listen and circle : Page 207

1. Where were you yesterday?
We were at school.
2. Do you play football?
Yes, I do.
3. Did he watch the football
match last night?
Yes, he did.
4. Where were you yesterday
afternoon?
I was at home.

2 Listen and complete :

Maha : What was on yesterday
afternoon?

Dina : A programme about
animals in Africa.

Maha : Aw, I missed it. Was it
good?

Dina : Yeah, it was. The
gorillas were really
cool.

Maha : Did you watch the
football match?

Dina : No, I don't like
watching football
matches on TV.

Test (9) on Unit (10)

1 Listen and circle : Page 237

1. Where were you yesterday?
At my uncle's house.
2. How long did you stay there?
I was there for a week.
3. Where were you on Sunday?
At my uncle's farm.
4. How do you go to school?
By taxi.

2 Listen and complete :

Reem : Where were you
yesterday evening?

Samira : At Amal's house.
We were watching
a programme about
animals.

Reem : Aw! I missed it. Was it
good?

Samira : Yeah, it was. The
gorillas were really
cool.

Reem : Did you watch the
football match last
night?

Samira : No, my mum was
watching the news.

Test (10) on Unit (10)

1 Listen and circle : Page 240

1. Did you go to the cinema?
No, I didn't.
2. What will happen if you go to
bed late?
I will be tired.
3. What will happen if you make
a mistake?
I'll be disappointed.
4. When will you go to school?
In the morning.

2 Listen and complete :

Sarah : Did you watch the
football match last
night?

Noha : No, my mum was
watching the news.
Besides, I don't like
watching football
matches on TV.

Sarah : Me, neither. It's not as
fun as watching a real
game.

Noha : Hey! There's a good
film on tonight. Do you
want to come over?

Sarah : I can't. My mum won't
let me watch TV on
a school night.

Noha : Too bad. Oh! There's
the bell. Time for class!

Answers of Main Book's Paragraphs & Emails

إجابات الموضوعات ورسائل البريد الإلكتروني في كتاب الشرح

UNIT (6)

* General Exercises on word time :

"Musical instruments"

I like music. My favourite musical instrument is the violin. I like playing the violin. I practise it daily. Practice makes perfect. My sister likes the harp. We practise together.

* General Exercises on Focus Time & Practice Time :

To : emad@gmail.com

From : atef@gmail.com

Subject : Musical instrument

Dear Emad,

How are you ? I like music. We go to the music room on Sundays. My teacher helps me. I play the drums loudly. Dina is my friend. She plays the violin well.

Yours,

Atef

Test (1) on Unit (6)

"The school concert"

We are getting ready for the school concert. I'm helping my teacher. I'm cleaning up the

music room. Mona is moving the bass. It's so heavy. I like music. I can play the bass.

Test (2) on Unit (6)

"Spring Performance"

We had a spring performance. It was a great show. The chorus sang a lot of songs. They sang well and very loudly. I was the soloist. We were happy. We took a nice picture.

UNIT (7)

* General Exercises on word time :

"Zoo animals"

I like zoo animals. I visited Giza zoo with my family. I saw the camel. My brother liked the bear. We saw funny monkeys. The giraffe is taller than the deer. The elephant was nice.

* General Exercise on Reading & Your time :

To : ali@gmail.com

From : maher@yahoo.com

Subject : The giant pandas

Dear Ali,

How are you ? I like pandas. Giant pandas eat bamboo. They

don't hibernate in winter. Giant pandas walk and run on all four legs. They can climb trees and swim. They are endangered.

Yours,

Maher

Test (3) on Unit (7)

"Black Bears"

Black bears eat everything. They eat fruits, nuts and fish. Adult black bears weigh 135 to 350 pounds. Baby black bears weigh 8 to 16 ounces. Black bears hibernate in winter. Black bears are not endangered. Around 750,000 black bears are alive today.

Test (4) on Unit (7)

To : ahmed@gmail.com

From : amir@gmail.com

Subject : zoo animals escape

Dear Ahmed,

Hi ! Yesterday, I went to the zoo. The animals escaped from the zoo. I was talking on the phone when the lion ran by. The panda walked by. The parrot flew by. I don't like wild animals. They are scary.

Yours,

Amir

UNIT (8)

* General Exercises on conversation time :

"The English class"

My favourite subject is English. I was at the English class. I couldn't write the letter "D". Miss Dina showed me how. She helped me. I could write the letter. She was happy. I like her so much.

* General Exercise on word time :

"On the beach"

My family are on the beach on holiday. My brother is throwing the ball. My sister is building a sand castle. My mother is peeling oranges. My father is reading a newspaper. The weather is sunny. It's a nice day.

* General Exercise on Focus Time & Practice Time :

To : nada@gmail.com

From : salim@gmail.com

Subject : When I was young

Dear Nada,

How are you ? When I was two, I could throw a ball. I couldn't spell a word. When I was 5, I could say the alphabet. I couldn't

peel an orange. When I was six, I could count to ten. I couldn't cut out a heart.

Yours,
Salim

*** General Exercises on Reading & your time :**

To : samy@gmail.com

From : khaled@gmail.com

Subject : In the kindergarten

Dear Samy,

How are you and your family ? Children in the kindergarten are happy. They blow bubbles. They count to ten. In the kindergarten, they build sand castles. They spell words. They have a nice time there.

Yours,
Khaled

Test (5) on Unit (8)

To : eman@gmail.com

From : Mona@yahoo.com

Subject : My Kindergarten

Dear Eman,

How are you ? I want to tell you about my kindergarten. I could say the alphabet. I could throw a ball. I could count to ten. I couldn't speak English. I like my

kindergarten.
See you soon.
Yours,
Mona

Test (6) on Unit (8)

"My friend"

When my friend moved away, I was sad. I miss him very much. He lives in New York. We were friends at school. He is a nice friend. I call him every Friday. I will visit him next summer.

Mini test on Unit (8)

"My School"

I go to school every day. I go to school on foot. My school is very nice. Miss Dina helps me to learn. I like her very much. I like English. It's easy.

UNIT (9)

*** General Exercises on conversation time :**

"An interview with a pilot"

I interviewed a pilot for our school newspaper. I asked her some questions. Nine pilots work for her airline. One third of the pilots are female. She flies abroad. She has an overseas

flight once a month. She likes being a pilot very much. She has a copilot.

*** General Exercises on Focus Time & Practice Time :**

To : mustafa@yahoo.com

From : amr@gmail.com

Subject : My visit to Cairo

Dear Mustafa,

How are you ? I visited Cairo last Thursday. Cairo is a big city. I went with my family. We visited the Egyptian Museum. We saw the citadel. Cairo Tower is very tall.

Yours,
Amr

*** General Exercises on Reading & your time :**

To : omar@gmail.com

From : ali@yahoo.com

Subject : My visit to New York

Dear Omar,

How is your family ? I visited New York City last holiday. It is called the Big Apple. Many people visit New York every year. It is a big city. It's an exciting place. There are many shops, museums and restaurants there.

Yours,
Ali

Test (7) on Unit (9)

"At the airport"

I went to the airport last week. My uncle is a pilot. He travels abroad. He always has a copilot. The airline has 10 pilots. One third of the pilots are female. He likes being a pilot.

Test (8) on Unit (9)

"Cities around the world"

Over 30 million people visit New York City every year. It is one of the most exciting cities in the world. It has many restaurants, shops and museums. I visited the Statue of Liberty. I got a ticket for a show at Broadway theatre. We could have boat, bus and walking tours. I had a nice time there.

UNIT (10)

*** General Exercises on conversation time :**

"A programme about animals"

I saw a programme about animals yesterday. It was a good programme. The gorillas are really cool. The lion is dangerous. The cheetah is fast. The camel is tall. I like animals very much.

Answers of main book's

* General Exercises on word time :

"Food in a restaurant"

I went to a restaurant with my family. We were hungry. We had lunch there. We ordered beef. I was in the mood for beef. The food was delicious. We had a nice time there.

* General Exercises on Focus Time & Practice Time :

"At school"

I like my school. I go to school by bus. I go with my friends. I never go to school late. I never forget my homework. I always get a good mark. I like English.

Test (9) on Unit (10)

"The history of TV"

The first televisions went on sale in 1939. The first televisions with remote control went on sale in 1956. Public broadcasting began in Egypt in black and white in 1960. The first Egyptian satellite was launched in 1998. My father bought a new TV last week. It's very nice. I watch it in the evening.

Test (10) on Unit (10)

To : said@gmail.com

From : amir@yahoo.com

Subject : My favourite programme

Dear Said,

How are you ? I like watching programmes. My favourite programme is about sports. I like football very much. I watch matches with my family. My mum doesn't let me watch TV on a school night. I should sleep early.

Yours,

Amir

Mini test on Unit (10)

"Computers"

Computer is very important. I have a computer. I like playing computer games. I study my lessons on my computer. I like sending emails to my friends. I am very good at using computers. I have many CDs.

١. ثلاث نماذج امتحانات من كتاب التدريبات

Workbook Sample Test 1

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

- a. I'm playing football.
b. I'm helping Mr. Khaled.
- a. It's so heavy.
b. It's hot.
- a. Did they go to the zoo?
b. Did they go to the cinema?
- a. What is it?
b. Who is he?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Amal : Where are you going ?

Magda : I am going to the (1)

Amal : Why are you (2) there ?

Magda : I'd like to do some shopping.

Amal : (3) is going with you ?

Magda : (4) brother, Ahmed.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I'm ready for the concert.
a. playing b. getting c. having d. seeing
- Can you the wild animal ?
a. see b. phone c. eat d. visit
- How did they play the match ? They played
a. well b. good c. bad d. quiet

- I can a newspaper.
a. eat b. wash c. read d. feed
- She the vegetables.
a. phones b. reads c. feeds d. chops
- The eagle is faster the parrot.
a. then b. that c. than d. this
- He plays the slowly.
a. shoes b. house c. car d. drums
- your name and address ?
a. Who's b. What's c. Whose d. When's

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- flute - train - drums - tuba (.....)
- badly - quietly - good - loudly (.....)
- lion - deer - bird - tiger (.....)
- run - play - cook - chair (.....)
- one - two - three - fat (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Every morning, Ali gets up at six o'clock. He has his breakfast with his family. He usually has bread, cheese, eggs and milk. Then he carries his school bag and goes to school. On his way to school he buys a flower. He gives it to Mr. Salah, his English teacher. He usually has lunch at three p.m. He goes to bed at eight o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ali up at six o'clock.
a. plays b. carries c. gives d. gets
- He buys a to his English teacher.
a. breakfast b. lunch c. flower d. milk

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Ali have for his breakfast ?

.....

4. What does he do at eight o'clock ?

.....

C Writing**6 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences :**

.....

.....

.....

.....

**7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:**

1. have - party - did - of - school - kind - **What** - the - ?

.....

2. sadly - **He** - recorder - the - played - yesterday - .

.....

3. phone - on - **Was** - talking - the - she - ?

.....

4. car - was - washing - the - **He** - .

.....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. how many books did Asmaa's brother buy yesterday

.....

2. Asmaa s brother went to the giza Zoo last week.

.....

Workbook Sample Test 2 مجاب عنه**A Listening****1 Listen and circle:** استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

1. a. I'm sorry, Miss Sokkara.

b. Okay. Let me show you.

2. a. I got a million.

b. I got a hundred.

3. a. Do you fly the plane by yourself ?

b. Do you iron the shirt by yourself ?

4. a. Where is he going on Monday ?

b. Where is he going on Friday ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Amir : How was the film ?

Said : It was (1)

Amir : (2) is the hero ?

Said : (3) is Adel Imam.

Amir : When is it (4) in the evening ?

Said : It is open from 6 to 9.

B Reading**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Could we ask you questions ?

a. a few

b. a little

c. much

d. lot

2. Do you like a pilot ?

a. be

b. being

c. bee

d. doing

3. When did he to Hong Kong ?

a. go

b. went

c. gone

d. goes

4. I can English.

a. build

b. speak

c. peel

d. chop



5. My sister can to ten.
a. count b. catch c. cut d. kick
6. If he wins a prize, he will be
a. pride b. proud c. bread d. breed
7. female pilots work for your airlines ?
a. How many b. How much c. How far d. How long
8. My father always us presents when he comes back.
a. gave b. plays c. gives d. played

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. say - homework - blow - peel (.....)
2. Cairo - London - Rome - happy (.....)
3. programme - film - class - news (.....)
4. Sunday - October - November - December (.....)
5. fat - thin - tall - shirt (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Many tourists visit Egypt every year. Why ? Because Egypt has one third of the world's monuments. There are a lot of beaches, hotels and parks. They visit the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. They visit the Pyramids and Sphinx at Giza. They also visit temples at Luxor. They like taking photographs of our great places.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Many tourists Egypt every year.
a. visit b. come c. take d. give
2. They can visit the temples at
a. Cairo b. Giza c. Luxor d. Tanta

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do the tourists like to take ?

.....

4. What do they visit in Giza ?

.....

C Writing

6 Write an email of FOUR sentences:

Write an email to your friend Said to tell him about your visit to the pyramids last week. Your name is Amir and your email address is amir@school.com and his email is said@egy.com

To :
From :
Subject :

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. teacher - your - **Was** - Amira - Miss - grade - first - ?

.....

2. a month - once - have - **I** - flight - overseas - an - .

.....

3. little - was - he - when - **What** - Ali - could - do - ?

.....

4. days - for - **I** - two - there - was - .

.....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Is Ahmed s father watching the television

.....

2. No he isn't watching the television

.....

Workbook Sample Test 3

مجاب عنه

A Listening
1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

1. a. I was in the museum.
b. I was in the zoo.
2. a. No, I don't.
b. Yes, I do.
3. a. When did you travel to London ?
b. When did you travel to Paris ?
4. a. What kind of pie do you like to have ?
b. What kind of pie do you like to eat ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Mona : Did you go to the Pyramids, Omnia ?

Omnia : Yes, I (1)

Mona : How did you go there ?

Omnia : I (2) there by car.

Mona : (3) did you go with ?

Omnia : I went with my (4)

B Reading
3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was the car when the panda walked by.
a. washing b. wash c. washes d. washed
2. Afaf was in Hong Kong a week.
a. on b. for c. at d. of
3. How were you in Luxor ?
a. tall b. far c. old d. long
4. The tiger runs
a. slowly b. quickly c. loudly d. quietly



5. I could a bubble when I was little.
a. build b. cut c. give d. blow
6. Do you fly a plane by ?
a. myself b. himself c. yourself d. itself
7. She was tired. She was taking a
a. nap b. match c. prize d. homework
8. were you going yesterday evening, Amira ?
- To the market.
a. When b. What c. Where d. Whose

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. slow - quick - happily - sad (.....)
2. January - Monday - March - April (.....)
3. Which - When - Where - Do (.....)
4. woman - man - big - girl (.....)
5. himself - herself - itself - you (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Dear Samah,

When you moved away. I was sad. I miss you very much. Do you miss me ? Last Sunday, I went to our old friend Heba's house for dinner. She showed me some old photos of our kindergarten class. She reminded me of some interesting actions, we could do when we were little. Do you remember what you could do when you were little ? You could build huge sandcastles. Remember ? Do you like New York ? Are you making a lot of friends ?

Your friend,

Asmaa

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Heba showed Asmaa some old
a. photos b. birds c. clothes d. books

2. could build huge sand castles.

- a. Heba b. Samah c. Asmaa d. Omnia

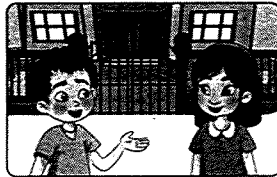
B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Samah live ?

4. What did Asmaa do last Sunday ?

C Writing

6 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences:



7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. TV - me - watch - mum - **My** - let - won't - .

2. night - you - **Did** - the - match - football - watch - last - ?

3. televisions - the - first - on - go - sale - **When** - did - ?

4. Egypt - 1960 - in - in - broadcasting - began - **Public** - .

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. when Ali's brother was little, he could blow a bubble

2. The Egyptian Museum isn't near the Zoo.

عشرون إمتحان من مختلف المحافظات طبقاً لمواصفات الورقة الإمتحانية ٢٠١٨ / ٢٠١٩ .

محافضة القاهرة / إدارة المطرية التعليمية

A Listening

1 Listen and circle : استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة .

1. a. She's from Paris.
b. He's from Paris.
2. a. He plays the piano slowly.
b. He plays the recorder slowly.
3. a. Do you drive the car yourself ?
b. Do you fly the plane yourself ?
4. a. What's your favourite food ?
b. What's your favourite animal ?

2 Listen and complete : استمع إلى معلمك واكمل .

Miss Dina : Mona, please come to the front, write the letter "d" on the board.

Mona : I don't how. I'm sorry.

Miss Dina : can't you do it ?

Mona : Because it is too hard.

Miss Dina : Let me you. It's easy. Don't give up.
Can you do it now ?

Mona : Hey, I do it.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The eagle is than the parrot.
a. fast b. faster c. fastest d. fat
2. He plays the harp
a. good b. slow c. bad d. well

3. Cairo is the of Egypt.
a. town b. city c. capital d. park
4. If you skip lunch, you hungry.
a. will b. could c. will be d. were
5. How many female can fly a plane ?
a. teachers b. pilots c. doctors d. farmers
6. When I was little, I count to ten.
a. could b. can c. was d. am
7. She was tired. She was taking a
a. nap b. match c. prize d. homework
8. It's hot, you can the fan.
a. turn off b. turn on c. look at d. fall off

4 Circle the odd word, and then replace it with a correct one :

1. Rome - Egypt - Tokyo - London (.....)
2. flute - cymbals - drum - homework (.....)
3. Friday - June - July - October (.....)
4. lion - deer - parrot - camel (.....)
5. take - make - went - win (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Here are some facts about giant pandas. When giant pandas are born, they weigh 80 to 140 grams. Adults usually weigh 80 to 125 kilos. Giant pandas eat bamboo. They don't hibernate in winter because they have to eat 8 to 16 kilos of bamboo every day. They eat for 12 to 16 hours daily. Giant pandas walk and run on all four legs. They can climb trees and swim. Giant pandas live in the mountains of China.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Giant pandas walk and run on all their
a. heads b. arms c. legs d. ears
2. Giant pandas live in the of China.
a. park b. home c. garden d. mountains

B. Answer the following questions :

3. What do giant pandas eat ?
.....
4. Why don't giant pandas hibernate in the winter ?
.....

C Writing

6 Write an email of FOUR sentences :

Write an email to your friend Ali to tell him about your visit to the zoo. Your name is Amr. Your email address is amr@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is ali@yahoo.com

To :
From :
Subject :

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

1. did - tuba - **How** - he - the - play ?
.....
2. couldn't - sandcastle - **Mona** - a - build.
.....
3. went - London - **He** - in - to - July.
.....
4. address - **What's** - and - name - your ?
.....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. i'm from egypt.
.....
2. How do ali and Heba go to school
.....

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

1. a. I'm playing football.
b. I'm helping my sister.
2. a. No, they went to the cinema.
b. No, they went to the museum.
3. a. What did they get ?
b. Where did you go ?
4. a. Do you like being a teacher ?
b. Do you like being a pilot ?



2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Rima : Do you like (1)

Nada : Yes, I like it very much.

Rima : What's your (2) instrument ?

Nada : I like playing the (3)

Rima : (4) do you practise it ?

Nada : At the club.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When did he to London ?
a. go b. goes c. went d. going
2. I was the car when the panda walked by.
a. washing b. wash c. washes d. washed
3. If you lunch, you will be hungry.
a. have b. eat c. make d. skip

4. When I was young, I could a bubble.
a. blow b. ride c. build d. spell
5. She was tired. She was taking a
a. prize b. homework c. nap d. grocer
6. Nader was the on the violin.
a. doctor b. teacher c. soloist d. pilot
7. Do you fly plane by ?
a. himself b. yourself c. myself d. itself
8. The lion is than the elephant.
a. fast b. fastest c. faster d. slow

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. January - May - Saturday - July (.....)
2. cinema - bank - walk - zoo (.....)
3. go - run - animal - talk (.....)
4. woman - man - big - girl (.....)
5. Where - do - Why - How (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Tom is my friend. He is from New York. He comes to Egypt every year. He visits the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. He goes to Giza to visit the Pyramids and our monuments. He also likes going to the zoo. He likes animals. His favourite animal is the lion. Before coming back to New York, Tom visits Alexandria. He likes to swim in the sea and build sand castles.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tom likes to visit before coming back to New York.
a. Giza b. Cairo c. Alexandria d. Aswan
2. Tom is from
a. Cairo b. Giza c. Luxor d. New York

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why does Tom go to the zoo ?

4. What does Tom like to visit in Cairo ?

C Writing**6 Write an email of Four sentences :**

Write an email to your friend Ahmed telling him about your school. Your name is Ali. Your email address is ali@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is ahmed@yahoo.com

To :
From :
Subject :

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. room - the music - up - clean - I

2. TV - watch - mum - **My** - let me - won't

3. phone - on - **Was** - talking - the - she ?

4. chocolate - he - like - **Does** ?

8 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. the Egyptian airport isn't small

2. Is Gamal s father a doctor

A Listening**1 Listen and circle:** استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

- a. They went last month.
b. They went last week.
- a. I'm reading a book.
b. I'm watching a video.
- a. Does she play the flute ?
b. Does she play the tuba ?
- a. Where do you see your teacher ?
b. Where do you see your friends ?

2 Listen and complete : استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Hany : How are you, Ali ?

Ali : I'm (1), thanks.

Hany : What (2) you want to be ?

Ali : I want to be a doctor.

Hany : Do you want to (3) sick people ?

Ali : (4), I do.

B Reading**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- What of party did you have ?
a. fast b. high c. kind d. colour
- She was taking a because she was tired.
a. match b. nap c. prize d. homework
- I was the birds when the parrot flew by.
a. feeding b. fed c. feed d. feeds
- How many giant pandas are today ?
a. live b. life c. a life d. alive

5. Soha tried to catch a butterfly, but she
 a. can't b. can c. could d. couldn't
6. Ahmed always to school.
 a. walks b. walk c. walking d. walked
7. Pupils can sing at the school
 a. shop b. concert c. kitchen d. market
8. She plays the tuba
 a. good b. bad c. slow d. well

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one :

1. tiger - lion - bear - hibernate (.....)
2. teacher - doctor - nurse - bird (.....)
3. slowly - sadly - quickly - happy (.....)
4. went - eat - live - make (.....)
5. March - April - January - Friday (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Sami is a student who lives in Tanta. He likes music and computer very much. He writes emails to his friends abroad. He wants to travel to London when he is older. Last month he wanted to buy a new computer. He went to a computer shop in Cairo with his father. He bought a new one and was very happy because the new computer is a good one.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The computer shop is in
 a. Tanta b. London c. Alexandria d. Cairo
2. Samy went to the computer shop
 a. with his friend b. alone
 c. with his father d. with his sister

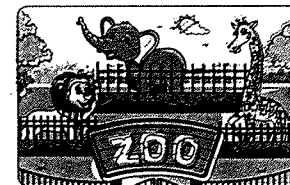
B. Answer the following questions :

3. Why was Sami happy ?

4. Where does Sami want to travel ?

C Writing

6 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences :



7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. How - coffee - you - do - have - much ?

2. yesterday - the - Mona - news - watching - was

3. you - questions - ask - Can - I - a few ?

4. live - in the - China - of - Pandas - mountains.

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Is noha coming to the club on Monday

2. Rana s brother went to the zoo on tuesday.

A Listening



1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

- a. I'm playing football.
b. I'm helping my father.
- a. It's so heavy.
b. It's hot.
- a. Did they go to the zoo ?
b. Did they go to the cinema ?
- a. What is it ?
b. Who is he ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Amr : Did you (1)..... to the pyramids, Mai ?

Mai : Yes, I did.

Amr : How did you go there ?

Mai : I (2)..... there by car.

Amr : (3)..... did you go with ?

Mai : I went with my (4).....

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

122. What's the ? Help ! There is something in my flat.
a. garden b. hotel c. emergency d. hospital
- A pilot has an overseas once a month.
a. flight b. fall c. follow d. fly
- He is vegetables now.
a. riding b. chopping c. diving d. feeding
- Ali was washing the car when his father in.
a. come b. came c. comes d. will come

5. How female pilots work for your airline ?

- a. many b. long c. much d. often

6. If you take off your jacket, you feel cold.

- a. was b. is c. were d. will

7. Please, don't speak My father is sleeping.

- a. quietly b. quiet c. loud d. loudly

8. My parents were of me because I got high marks.

- a. happy b. proud c. sad d. disappointed

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one :

- short - bad - quickly - old (.....)
- run - play - eat - lion (.....)
- one - two - three - fat (.....)
- badly - good - sadly - quickly (.....)
- violin - tiger - camel - elephant (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions :

My name is Mohamed. I'm from Shobra. I live with my family in a big house. My father is a doctor and he works in a hospital. He goes to his work by car. I go to primary school with my mother on foot. My mother teaches me English at school. All pupils in my mother's classes like her because she is a good teacher. I have a brother and a sister. On Friday, we visit our grandfather who lives in a nearby village. I want to be a doctor like my father when I grow up to help people.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Mohamed wants to be a when he grows up.
a. teacher b. doctor c. pilot d. chemist
- Mohamed's grandfather lives in a
a. city b. town c. school d. village

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Mohamed's father work ?

.....

4. Why do the pupils like Mohamed's mother ?

.....

C Writing**6 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:**

.....

.....

.....

.....

**7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:**

1. play - football - When - Ali - does ?

.....

2. do - homework - Help - my - to - me.

.....

3. yesterday - Did - TV - you - watch ?

.....

4. behind - box - is - There - a - you.

.....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. is Ali's father speaking

.....

2. the Egyptian Museum isn't near the school

.....

A Listening**1 Listen and circle:** استمع إلى مملك وضع دائرة.

1. a. He plays the piano well.
b. He plays the piano happily.
2. a. To visit the Big Apple.
b. To visit the zoo.
3. a. Can you fly a kite ?
b. Can you fly a plane ?
4. a. What is he doing now ?
b. What is she doing now ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى مملك واكمل.

Mazen : Can I (1) you some questions ?

Miss Heba : Sure. Go ahead.

Mazen : What could you do when you (2) seven ?

Miss Heba : I could (3) a butterfly.

Mazen : Could you speak English ?

Miss Heba : No, it was too (4)

B Reading**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Mona is ready for the school concert.
a. get b. got c. gets d. getting
2. Do black bears in winter ?
a. hibernate b. win c. born d. weigh
3. What of party did you have ?
a. time b. kind c. colour d. class



4. Let me you how.
a. pass b. come c. show d. write
5. I can't lift this by It's so heavy.
a. himself b. myself c. yourself d. herself
6. They were there four days.
a. to b. on c. of d. for
7. Omar went to Luxor January.
a. in b. to c. out d. at
8. Our teacher told us some stories. We liked them.
a. bad b. sad c. funny d. small

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. Rome - capital - Tokyo - Cairo (.....)
2. flute - drums - bus - tuba (.....)
3. parrot - deer - lion - tiger (.....)
4. sister - uncle - brother - friend (.....)
5. sadly - fly - slowly - badly (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Ali did his homework at 2.00 yesterday. Then, he had lunch with his parents and his brother. At five o'clock, he went with his father to the supermarket on foot. They bought some cakes and cold drinks. In the evening, they watched TV. They laughed a lot because the film was comedy. Ali went to bed at ten o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ali to the supermarket.
a. saw b. bought c. walked d. watched
2. Ali had lunch with his
a. family b. friends c. sisters d. doctors

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did they buy at five o'clock?

4. When did Ali go to bed?

C Writing

6 Write an email of FOUR sentences :

Write an email to your friend Mustafa to tell him about your visit to Cairo last Thursday. Your name is Amr and your email address is amr@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is mustafa@yahoo.com

To :
From :
Subject :

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. from - are - , Mohamed - Where - you ?

2. horse - is - the dog - faster - The - than.

3. bears - Black - winter - hibernate - in - the.

4. ever - the - Do - feed - you - birds ?

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. She isn t sweeping the floor

2. how many books did Reem's father buy

A Listening



1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

- I was in the museum.
 - I was in the zoo.
- No, I don't.
 - Yes, I do.
- When did you travel to London?
 - When did you travel to Paris?
- What kind of pie do you like to have?
 - What kind of pie do you like to eat?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Retaj : Where are you going ?

Esraa : I am going to the (1) store.

Retaj : Why are you (2) there ?

Esraa : I'd like to do some shopping.

Retaj : (3) is going with you ?

Esraa : (4) brother, Deyaa.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I can a newspaper.
 - eat
 - wash
 - read
 - feed
- He plays the slowly.
 - shoes
 - house
 - car
 - drums
- If he wins a prize, he will be
 - pride
 - proud
 - bread
 - breed

- She was tired. She was taking a
 - nap
 - match
 - prize
 - homework
- I was ready for the concert.
 - get
 - getting
 - to get
 - got
- The tiger runs
 - slowly
 - quickly
 - loudly
 - quietly
- When did he to Hong Kong ?
 - go
 - went
 - gone
 - goes
- My sister say the alphabet when she was little.
 - can
 - will
 - could
 - may

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one :

- slow - quick - happily - sad (.....)
- January - Monday - March - April (.....)
- Which - When - Where - Do (.....)
- woman - man - big - girl (.....)
- himself - herself - itself - your (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions :

Every morning, Ali gets up early at six o'clock a.m. He washes and has his breakfast with his father, mother and sister. He usually has milk, eggs, cheese and bread. Then he carries his school bag and goes to school on foot. On his way to school, he buys a flower. He gives it to his teacher of English, Mr Abdelhady. He usually has lunch at three p.m. After that, he studies his lessons. He goes to bed at eight o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ali up at six o'clock.
 - plays
 - carries
 - gives
 - gets

2. He buys a to his teacher of English.

- a. breakfast b. lunch c. flower d. milk

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Ali have in his breakfast ?

4. What does he do at eight o'clock ?

C Writing

6 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:



7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. songs - **The** - of - sang - chorus - a lot.

2. bubble - a - **He** - blow - could - big.

3. pandas - **How much** - giant - do - weigh - adult ?

4. often - do - a haircut - you - **How** - get ?

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. did they go to the Zoo

2. ali can t play tennis.

A Listening

1 Listen and circle : استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

1. a. Once a month.
b. Once a week.
2. a. He played the harp sadly.
b. He played the drums loudly.
3. a. Are your parents home ?
b. Are your parents at the cinema ?
4. a. Do you fly the plane by yourself ?
b. Do you ever fly abroad ?

2 Listen and complete : استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Heba : What are you doing, Noha ?

Noha : I'm (1) up the music room.

Heba : Can I (2) you ?

Noha : Sure. You can move the (3)

Heba : Where can I (4) it ?

Noha : By the window, please.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can an orange.
a. feed b. blow c. peel d. make
2. When Amr was little, he say the alphabet.
a. can b. could c. will d. is
3. Youssef is singing by himself. He is the
a. soloist b. chorus c. player d. teacher
4. If she lunch, she will be hungry.
a. skip b. skips c. skipping d. skipped
5. How were you in Rome ? - For two weeks.
a. many b. much c. tall d. long

6. Could we ask you questions ?
 a. a few b. a little c. much d. lot
7. Did you the football match last night ?
 a. watched b. watches c. watching d. watch
8. Kareem is ready for the school concert.
 a. taking b. getting c. giving d. doing

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one :

1. programme - film - class - news (.....)
2. Sunday - February - August - October (.....)
3. happily - quietly - good - badly (.....)
4. count - chop - catch - vegetables (.....)
5. panda - eagle - deer - giraffe (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

When giant pandas are born, they weigh 80 to 140 grams. Adults usually weigh 80 to 125 kilos. Giant pandas eat bamboo. They don't hibernate in the winter because they have to eat 8 to 16 kilos of bamboo every day. Giant pandas walk and run on all four legs. They can climb trees and swim. Giant pandas live in the mountains of China. They are endangered. Around 700 to 1000 pandas are alive today.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Giant pandas live in the of China.
 a. mountains b. ponds c. rivers d. trees
2. Giant pandas eat
 a. meat b. animals c. bamboo d. birds

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why don't giant pandas hibernate in winter ?

.....

4. How much do baby pandas weigh ?

.....

C Writing

6 Write an email of FOUR sentences :

Write an email to your friend Abeer to tell her about your visit to the zoo last week. Your name is Sally. Your email address is sally@yahoo.com. Your friend's address is abeer@yahoo.com

To :

From :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. TV - watch - My - let me - mum - won't.

.....

2. drums - you - How - the - play - did ?

.....

3. lift - by - I - myself - can't - it.

.....

4. address - What's - name - and - your ?

.....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. this is my car

.....

2. did you go there

.....

A Listening



1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

- I'm helping Mr Khaled clean up the music room.
 - I'm getting ready for the concert.
- If I take off my jacket, I'll be cold.
 - If I turn off the fan, I'll be hot.
- How much do adult pandas weigh?
 - How many giant pandas are alive today?
- How many museums are there in New York City?
 - Why do people visit New York City?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Miss Kareema : Amira, please come to the front. Can you
(1) the letter "M" on the board?

Amira : No, I don't know (2)

Miss Kareema : Come on, Amira. Don't (3) up.

Amira : Can you (4) me, Miss?

Miss Kareema : Yes, of course. You can do it like this.

Amira : Thank you, Miss.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- playing music now ?
 - Whose
 - Who
 - Who's
 - Whom
- Can you the alphabet, Reem ?
 - speak
 - say
 - blow
 - talk
- A : How water do you have ?
 B : Three bottles.
 - many
 - often
 - little
 - much
- He likes music. He plays the xylophone
 - well
 - will
 - good
 - bad

5. Maha is a good girl. She always good marks.

- goes
- drinks
- gets
- falls

6. The plane is than the car.

- fast
- the fastest
- fastest
- faster

7. She is a female She flies a plane.

- driver
- pilot
- teacher
- doctor

8. We can tell the police when there is

- a concert
- an officer
- an emergency
- a TV

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- tiger - camel - eagle - kangaroo (.....)
- take - spoke - wash - climb (.....)
- I - we - her - he (.....)
- happy - disappointed - embarrassed - skip (.....)
- Saturday - Sunday - Monday - August (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Dear Ahmed,

When you moved away, I was sad. I miss you very much. Last Friday I went to our friend Omar's house for lunch. He showed me some old photos for our kindergarten class. He reminded me of the interesting actions we could do when we were little. Do you remember what you could do when we were little? You could build huge sandcastles. Do you like London? Are you making a lot of friends?

Your friend,
Ayman.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Omar showed Ayman some old
 - castles
 - clothes
 - books
 - photos
- could build huge sandcastles when he was little.
 - Ahmed
 - Omar
 - Ayman
 - Ashraf

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where does Ahmed live ?

.....

4. What did Ayman do last Friday ?

.....

C Writing**6 Write an email of FOUR sentences :**

Write an email to your friend Heba to tell her about your next summer holiday. Your name is Rana and your email address is rana97@gmail.com and your friend's email address is heba90@yahoo.com

To :

From :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences :

1. happily - He - flute - the - played - yesterday.

.....

2. your - and - What's - address - name ?

.....

3. quietly - He - the tuba - played.

.....

4. phone - on - Was - talking - the - she ?

.....

8 Punctuate the following sentences :

1. Asala's sister went to cairo last week

.....

2. Where were you last Tuesday, hanan

.....

A Listening**1 Listen and circle:** استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

- a. She went in May.
b. She went in April.
- a. You should stay calm.
b. You should go out.
- a. Is this the wild animal ?
b. Is this your pencil ?
- a. How did he play the drums ?
b. How did he play the violin ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

- A : How many female pilots work for your airline ?
B : I think one of the pilots are female.
- A : How do you fly abroad ?
B : I have an overseas once a month.
- A : Do you fly the plane by ?
B : No, I always have a copilot.

B Reading**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

- When the performance start ?
a. was b. were c. did d. is
- If she hard, she'll get a good mark.
a. studies b. study c. studied d. doesn't study
- I English very well.
a. speak b. think c. get d. take

4. We were watching yesterday evening.
a. radio b. TV c. phone d. music
5. How did they play the match ? They played it
a. well b. good c. bad d. quiet
6. She the vegetables.
a. phones b. feeds c. reads d. chops
7. Do you like a pilot ?
a. be b. being c. been d. doing
8. I could a bubble when I was little.
a. build b. cut c. give d. blow

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. slow - happily - sad - good (.....)
2. Cairo - London - March - Rome (.....)
3. lion - bird - tiger - deer (.....)
4. drums - tuba - cymbals - sadly (.....)
5. captain - pilot - officer - parrot (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

My friend Adel was having a good time in Cairo with his family. They visited Cairo Museum last Monday. Yesterday morning, they visited the Pyramids in Giza. It was fun ! In the afternoon, they went to a film studio and watched the actors rehearse. In the evening, they went to have dinner at a nice restaurant.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Adel was having a good time in
a. Alexandria b. Port Said c. Cairo d. Luxor
2. On Monday, Adel visited the
a. museum b. studio c. hotel d. restaurant

B. Answer the following questions :

3. When did Adel visit the Pyramids in Giza ?
.....
4. What did Adel and his family do in the evening ?
.....

C Writing

6 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:

.....

.....

.....

.....



7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. phone - on - **Was** - talking - the - she ?
.....
2. long - were - **How** - London- you - in ?
.....
3. TV - me - **My mum** - watch - won't - let.
.....
4. lift - can't - **I** - myself - by - it.
.....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what s your name and address ?
.....
2. she played it slowly
.....

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

1. a. Nada could spell words.
b. Hala could spell words.
2. a. I want to be a teacher.
b. I want to be a doctor.
3. a. Can I help you ?
b. Can I carry the bag for you ?
4. a. Where do you go on Sundays ?
b. Where do you go on Fridays ?



2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Omar : Could I ask you a few questions ?

Ali : (1)

Omar : Do you ever fly (2)

Ali : Yes, I have an overseas (3) once a week.

Omar : Do you ever fly the (4) by yourself ?

Ali : No, I always have a copilot.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was the car when the panda walked by.
a. washing b. wash c. washes d. washed
2. female pilots work for your airlines ?
a. How far b. How much c. How many d. How long
3. Please, your paper from one to five.
a. numbered b. number c. numbers d. numbering
4. The tiger runs
a. slowly b. quickly c. loudly d. quietly
5. I could a bubble when I was little.
a. build b. cut c. give d. blow

6. Do you fly a plane by ?

- a. myself b. himself c. yourself d. itself

7. She was tired. She was taking a nap when her father by.

- a. coming b. came c. comes d. come

8. The school sang a lot of songs.

- a. drums b. homework c. door d. chorus

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. say - homework - blow - peel (.....)
2. Cairo - London - Rome - happy (.....)
3. programme - film - class - news (.....)
4. Sunday - October - November - December (.....)
5. fat - thin - tall - shirt (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Dear Menna,

How are you ? When you moved away, we were sad. We miss you very much. Do you miss us ? Last Saturday, we saw Miss Fatma. She was our kindergarten teacher. Do you remember her ? Kareem and I went to her house for lunch. She said when you were little, you could build enormous sandcastles. Do you like Oxford ? Please write soon.

Yours,

Israa.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Menna lives in now.
a. kindergarten b. Cairo
c. Oxford d. a sandcastle
2. When Menna moved away, Israa was
a. bad b. sad c. happy d. proud

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Kareem and Israa go to Miss Fatma's house ?

4. What could Menna do when she was little ?

C Writing

6 Write an email of FOUR sentences :

Write an email to your friend Amr. Tell him about your school performance. Your name is Ahmed and your email address is ahmed@yahoo.com. Your friend's address is amr@yahoo.com

To :
 From :
 Subject :

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. in Egypt - began - in - **Public** - 1960 - broadcasting.

2. doing - were - **What** - you ?

3. sadly - recorder - played - the - **He** - yesterday.

4. of - **Are you** - a lot - friends - making ?

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Is ahmed's father reading a newspaper

2. april is Habiba s favourite month.

A Listening



1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى مملتك وضع دائرة.

1. a. I'm playing football.
b. I'm helping Mr Ali.
2. a. No, I don't.
b. Yes, I do.
3. a. Where is he going on Friday ?
b. Where is he going on Tuesday ?
4. a. When did you travel to London ?
b. When did you travel to Paris ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى مملتك واكمل.

- Maha : Did you go to the pyramids, Amira ?
 Amira : Yes, I (1)
 Maha : (2) did you go there ?
 Amira : I went there by car.
 Maha : (3) did you go with ?
 Amira : I went with my (4)

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I can English.
a. build b. speak c. peel d. chop
2. My sister can to ten.
a. count b. catch c. cut d. kick
3. I'm ready for the concert.
a. playing b. getting c. having d. seeing
4. The eagle is faster the parrot.
a. then b. that c. than d. this

5. Do you like a pilot ?
 a. be b. being c. bee d. doing
6. He plays the slowly.
 a. shoes b. house c. drums d. car
7. If he off his chair, he'll be embarrassed.
 a. fall b. falls c. falling d. fell
8. Samira was in Aswan a week.
 a. on b. for c. at d. of

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. April - Monday - June - March. (.....)
2. himself - herself - itself - your (.....)
3. run - play - cook - chair (.....)
4. fat - thin - tall - shirt (.....)
5. Which - When - Do - Where (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Every morning, Omar gets up at seven o'clock. He has his breakfast with his family. He usually has bread, cheese, eggs and milk, then he carries his school bag and goes to school. On his way to school he buys a flower. He gives it to Mr Nabil his English teacher. He usually has lunch at two p.m. He goes to bed at nine o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar up at seven o'clock.
 a. plays b. carries c. gives d. gets
2. Omar buys to his English teacher.
 a. breakfast b. lunch c. a flower d. milk

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Omar have in his breakfast ?

4. What does he do at nine o'clock ?

C Writing

6 Write an email of FOUR sentences :

Write an email to your friend Dina to tell her about your visit to the zoo last week. Your name is Dalia and your email address is dalia2010@yahoo.com . Your friend's email address is dina2013@yahoo.com

To :

From :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. sadly - He - recorder - the - played - yesterday.

2. fly - often - How - abroad - she - does.

3. emergency - is - What - the ?

4. days - for - I - two - there - was.

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. is Ali's father watching the television

2. We study english on Monday

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

- a. I'm helping my teacher.
b. I'm helping my mother.
- a. I went there by plane.
b. I went there by bus.
- a. How does he play the flute?
b. How does he play the cello?
- a. Do you ever feed the lions?
b. Do you ever feed the birds?



2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Ayman: What are you (1)

Eman : I'm cleaning (2) the room.

Ayman: Can I (3) you?

Eman : Sure. Can you move that chair by the window?

Ayman: I can't. It's too heavy.

Eman : I'll move (4)

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- If she lunch, she'll be hungry.
a. skips b. makes c. wins d. rides
- He was the car when his father came.
a. wash b. washed c. washing d. to wash
- I'm because I got high marks.
a. sad b. proud c. loud d. quiet
- Salma is vegetables now.
a. diving b. feeding c. chopping d. playing

- I can't write this word. It's too
a. easy b. hard c. simple d. small
- He is very clever. He plays the xylophone
a. bad b. badly c. good d. well
- giant pandas are alive today?
a. How much b. How often c. How many d. How
- Can you count ten?
a. by b. for c. of d. to

4 Circle the odd word out and replace it with a correct one:

- did - saw - go - wrote (.....)
- singer - faster - shorter - bigger (.....)
- badly - quietly - slow - loudly (.....)
- lion - book - deer - panda (.....)
- night - morning - afternoon - cold (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Miss Rania is a kindergarten teacher. She is twenty-three years old. She is kind and helpful. She starts work at 7 o'clock a.m. Miss Rania is very active. She teaches the children in the kindergarten to read, write and count. She tells them jokes and funny stories, so all the children love her.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Kindergarten is a kind of for children aged from 2 to 5.
a. farm b. hospital c. factory d. school
- Miss Rania is years old.
a. 22 b. 23 c. 24 d. 25

B. Answer the following questions:

- When does Miss Rania start work?
.....

- What do children learn in the kindergarten?
.....

C Writing**6 Write an email of FOUR sentences :**

Write an email to your friend Emad about your favourite musical instrument. Your name is Atef. Your email address is atef@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is emad@gmail.com

To :
 From :
 Subject :

.....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. getting - She's - for - concert - ready - the.

2. pandas - Adult - 80 - to 125 - weigh - kilos.

3. department - Is - a - store - there ?

4. fell - chair - his - He - off.

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Is sally coming home on tuesday ?

2. no, he isn t watching the match.

A Listening**1 Listen and circle:** استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

1. a. I was in the museum.
b. I was in the zoo.
2. a. It's so heavy.
b. It's hot.
3. a. When did you travel to Paris ?
b. When did you travel to London ?
4. a. Where is he going on Monday ?
b. Where is he going on Tuesday ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Ali : Where are you going ?

Hani : I am going to the (1) store.

Ali : (2) are you going there ?

Hani : I'd like to do some shopping.

Ali : Who is going (3) you ?

Hani : (4) brother, Omar.

B Reading**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Come on Mona. Don't up.
a. help b. take c. visit d. give
2. When the performance ?
a. does b. was c. did d. can
3. I can a newspaper.
a. eat b. wash c. read d. feed

4. Do you fly a plane by ?
 a. yourself b. myself c. himself d. herself
5. Ahmed was washing the car when the flew by.
 a. deer b. parrot c. bear d. tiger
6. The lion is faster the elephant.
 a. then b. than c. that d. this
7. She was tired. She was taking a
 a. match b. prize c. nap d. clap
8. Last Monday, we Dina.
 a. see b. seen c. seeing d. saw

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. tuba - drum - train - flute (.....)
2. dear - lion - tiger - deer (.....)
3. run - cook - play - chair (.....)
4. Cairo - London - Rome - March (.....)
5. badly - family - well - slowly (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last Saturday, we saw Miss Dina. She was our kindergarten teacher. Mona and I went to her house for lunch. She showed us old photos of our kindergarten class. She told us some funny stories, too. She told us when we were little; we could build enormous sand castles. We liked Miss Dina because she was clever and kind.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We saw Miss Dina last
 a. Monday b. Tuesday c. Saturday d. Friday
2. We went to Miss Dina's house for
 a. lunch b. breakfast c. dinner d. drink

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Miss Dina show the girls ?

4. What did the girls build when they were little ?

C Writing

6 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences :

.....



7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. ready - for - He's - concert - getting - the.

2. were - yesterday - What - friends - doing - your ?

3. an overseas - have - flight - a month - once - I .

4. phone - on - Was - talking - the - she ?

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. no, he isn't watching the television

2. what did Amira do yesterday

A Listening



1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

1. a. We're drawing.
b. We're cleaning up.
2. a. Yes, I do.
b. No, I don't.
3. a. What's your name?
b. What's your address?
4. a. Who's Kareem?
b. Who's Mona?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Fady : Where were you yesterday afternoon?

Ali : I was at (1)

Fady : Did you watch the (2) match?

Ali : No, my mother was watching a (3)

Fady : Was it (4) or bad?

Ali : I don't know. I don't watch TV on a school night.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Neil Armstrong walked on the
a. sun b. moon c. sea d. stars
2. When you were little, you catch a butterfly.
a. couldn't b. will c. doesn't d. isn't

3. We English well.

- a. throw b. cut c. eat d. speak

4. Hany played the drum

- a. sad b. slow c. loudly d. loud

5. I can an orange by myself.

- a. peel b. talk c. hear d. do

6. They went to Paris April.

- a. on b. in c. at d. with

7. The chorus sang a lot of

- a. books b. stories c. songs d. homework

8. I a sand castle when you called me to swim.

- a. was building b. are building c. building d. builds

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. ball - October - September - April (.....)
2. drum - flute - xylophone - breakfast (.....)
3. one - seven - teacher - thirty (.....)
4. leg - bed - nose - mouth (.....)
5. mother - sister - brother - pizza (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Captain Adam is a pilot. He has an overseas flight once a month. He always has a copilot. His name is Capitan Hussein. They visited Rome. They were in Rome for two days. They visited the Big Apple - New York City. They like Cairo very much. People come to Cairo to visit museums and many exciting places.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Captain Adam is a
a. doctor b. pilot c. officer d. teacher
- Adam and Hussein were in for two days.
a. San Francisco b. London c. Rome d. U.S.A.

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the Big Apple ?
.....

4. Why do people come to Cairo ?
.....

C Writing**6 Look and write a paragraph of FOUR sentences:**

.....
.....
.....
.....

**7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:**

1. skip - ever - Do - lunch - you ?
.....

2. don't - my - I - homework - forget.
.....

3. go - Tokyo - to - Did - you ?
.....

4. school - like - I - my.
.....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. tarek visited Hong Kong
.....

2. when did colour broadcasting begin
.....

A Listening**1 Listen and circle:** استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

- a. I got a hundred.
b. I got twenty.
- a. That's okay.
b. It's easy.
- a. Do you clean the room by yourself ?
b. Do you fly the plane by yourself ?
- a. Where are you going on Friday ?
b. Where are you going on Sunday ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Operator : What's the emergency ?

Ahmed : Help! (1) is something in my garden.

Operator : (2) is it ?

Ahmed : I think it is a (3) animal. I can see its eyes.

Operator : Are your parents (4) ?

Ahmed : No. They went to the cinema.

B Reading**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- They played the match
a. good b. bad c. well d. quiet
- your name and address ?
a. What's b. Who's c. Whose d. When's
- Your father and your mother are your
a. daughters b. parents c. uncles d. sons
- He could a bubble when he was little.
a. cut b. give c. build d. blow

5. When did he to Hong Kong ?
 a. go b. went c. goes d. gone
6. If she lunch, she'll be hungry.
 a. skip b. skips c. skipped d. skipping
7. What she doing when the camel walked by ?
 a. does b. did c. were d. was
8. Giant pandas eat
 a. grass b. bamboo c. meat d. trees

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. lion - eagle - panda - deer (.....)
2. cymbals - harp - bus - bass (.....)
3. bad - sad - happy - slowly (.....)
4. cut - feed - read - book (.....)
5. Who - Whose - When - while (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Last Friday our school had a concert. The students of all grades wrote and performed a play. It was the hit of the evening. Samy was the soloist on the violin. Mona played the harp well. Kareem played the bass loudly. We were very happy. After the concert, we had a pizza party.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The students of wrote and performed a play.
 a. grade six b. grade five c. grade four d. all grades
2. played the harp well.
 a. Mona b. Kareem c. Samy d. Ali

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How was the play ?

4. Who was the soloist ?

C Writing

6 Write an email of FOUR sentences :

Write an email to your friend Said telling him about your visit to the pyramids last week. Your name is Amir. Your email address is amir@student.com. Your friend's email address is said@student.com

To :
 From :
 Subject :

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. likes - a - He - being - pilot.

2. phone - on - Was - talking - the - he ?

3. bass - move - She - the - can.

4. afternoon - you - Where - yesterday - were ?

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. What about going to Alexandria on sunday

2. ahmed and Asmaa like English very much

A Listening



1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

1. a. Yes, I could.
b. No, I couldn't.
2. a. You should stay calm.
b. You shouldn't go out.
3. a. How did he go to Paris?
b. When did he go to Paris?
4. a. Are your parents home?
b. Are your teachers home?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Sara : Where were you yesterday afternoon?

Noha : At Mona's house. We were (1) TV.

Sara : What (2) on?

Noha : A programme about animals in Africa.

Sara : Aw, I missed it. Was it (3)?

Noha : Yeah, it was. The kangaroos were really (4)

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm ready for the concert.
a. playing b. having c. getting d. seeing
2. He played the tuba
a. slow b. bad c. sad d. well
3. What's your name and?
a. dress b. address c. parents d. officer
4. What were you doing when your brother by?
a. ran b. runs c. running d. is running

5. How many black bears are today?
a. life b. a life c. live d. alive
6. When did she there?
a. went b. goes c. going d. go
7. Ali is blowing the
a. violin b. electric keyboard
c. cello d. flute
8. When I little, I could blow a bubble.
a. am b. is c. was d. were

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. day - month - week - city (.....)
2. cello - hard - tuba - harp (.....)
3. tiger - panda - giant - deer (.....)
4. Monday - March - April - August (.....)
5. slowly-loudly - bad - sadly (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Bob and Lili are our giant pandas. When giant pandas are born, they weigh 80 to 140 grams. Adults usually weigh 80 to 125 kilos. Giant pandas eat bamboo. They walk and run on all four legs. They can climb trees and swim. Giant pandas live in the mountains of China. Around 700 to 1000 pandas are alive today.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Giant pandas eat
a. fish b. bamboo c. meat d. fruit
2. Giant pandas live in the of China.
a. mountains b. trees c. parks d. schools

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What are Bob and Lili?

.....

4. How do pandas walk and run ?

(الجيزة ٢٠١٤)

C Writing

6 Write an email of FOUR sentences :

Write an email to your friend Kareem to tell him about your visit to the Egyptian Museum last week. Your name is Ali. Your email address is ali2018@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is kareem2017@yahoo.com

To :
From :
Subject :

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. Do - the plane - yourself - fly - by - you ?

2. over - Put - there - it.

3. long - she - was - How - there ?

4. it's - animal - think - wild - a - I.

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. when Mona was little, she could sing

2. did Heba go to the cinema with omar ?

محافظة قنا / إدارة قنا التعليمية

١٧

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

- a. At Mona's house.
b. At my uncle's house.
- a. He went in May.
b. He went in April.
- a. What did they do ?
b. What did they buy ?
- a. How did she play the drums ?
b. How did she play the flute ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Heba : Captain Soha, we'd like to interview you. Could we
(1) you a question ?

Captain Soha : Sure. Go (2)

Heba : How many female pilots work for your (3) ?

Captain Soha : I (4) one third of the pilots are female.

Heba : Thanks for your time, Captain Soha.

Captain Soha : My pleasure.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- When did he to Hong Kong ?
a. goes b. going c. go d. went
- The concert was the of the evening.
a. lift b. soft c. hit d. sit
- Do you skip lunch ?
a. never b. ever c. did d. didn't
- Ali at 33 Orabi Street.
a. lives b. visits c. thinks d. sends

5. What were you doing the camel ran by ?
 a. where b. were c. when d. what
6. I'm ready for the concert.
 a. playing b. gets c. sending d. getting
7. He plays the slowly.
 a. house b. trumpet c. train d. car
8. You move the bass.
 a. are b. is c. can d. am

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. flute - slow - recorder - harp (.....)
2. lion - camel - read - tiger (.....)
3. build - tall - blow - count (.....)
4. hungry - proud - happy - jacket (.....)
5. August - October - Monday - July (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

My name's Omar Saleh. I'm eleven years old. Last Friday, I visited the zoo with my family. Some animals escaped. I was peeling an orange when the camel walked by. My brother was talking on the phone when the eagle flew by. My sister was throwing a ball when the deer ran by. We had lunch at the zoo. We went home at three o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Omar was an orange when the camel walked by.
 a. throwing b. talking c. peeling d. playing
2. Omar's sister was throwing a ball when the ran by.
 a. lion b. eagle c. deer d. camel

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When did they go to the zoo ?

.....

4. Where did they have lunch ?

.....

C Writing

6 Write an email of FOUR sentences :

Write an e-mail to your friend Ahmed to tell him about what you could and couldn't do when you were little. Your name is Ali and your e-mail address is ali202@yahoo.com and your friend's e-mail address is ahmed01@yahoo.com

To :

From :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. songs - The - of - sang - chorus - a lot.

.....

2. emergency - is - What - the ?

.....

3. did - kind of - What - party - your school - have ?

.....

4. have - I - flight - an overseas - once - a month.

.....

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what happened in 1998

.....

2. they are cleaning up

.....

A Listening

1 Listen and circle: استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

1. a. He played the piano quickly.
b. He played the piano quietly.
2. a. We went to the zoo.
b. We went to the cinema.
3. a. How long were they there yesterday?
b. How did they go there yesterday?
4. a. What are you doing?
b. What are you watching?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Mona : (1)..... I ask you a few questions ?
 Tourist : Sure. (2)..... ahead.
 Mona : Did you visit Luxor ?
 Tourist : Yes. (3)..... week.
 Mona : How long (4)..... you there ?
 Tourist : I was there for three days.

B Reading

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What of party did you have yesterday ?
a. colour b. long c. kind d. old
2. He was the car when you phoned him.
a. wash b. washes c. washed d. washing
3. She can't the box. It's very heavy.
a. left b. lift c. felt d. write
4. If she a prize, she will be happy.
a. win b. wins c. won d. will win

5. I could a bubble.
a. build b. spell c. blow d. speak
6. She's care of her little brother.
a. looking b. taking c. seeing d. having
7. The plane is faster the train.
a. than b. that c. then d. there
8. Why she absent yesterday ?
a. did b. does c. was d. has

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. fly - day - say - play (.....)
2. mine - ours - hers - your (.....)
3. happy - hungry - sadly - easy (.....)
4. London - Cairo - Luxor - Giza (.....)
5. May - March - Monday - July (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Al-Dakhla is a big, nice city in the New Valley Governorate. It's about 820 kms from Cairo. It has many places you can visit. Tourists usually visit it in January and February to enjoy the fine weather. They always visit Al-Qasr Village. They see many monuments there. Moot is the biggest town in Al-Dakhla. It has many shops and restaurants. Most shops open at 10 : 00 a.m and close at 9 : 00 p.m Al-Dakhla has few factories, so the air is clean and healthy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourists usually visit Al-Dakhla in
a. summer b. Autumn c. spring d. winter
2. Most shops open for hours.
a. nine b. ten c. eleven d. twelve

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where can tourists see many monuments ?
.....
4. Why does Al-Dakhla have clean air ?
.....

C Writing**6 Write an email of FOUR sentences :**

Write an email to your friend Hany telling him about your school party last week. His email is hany88@yahoo.com. Your name is Samy. Your email address is samy22@yahoo.com

To :

From :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. yourself - Do - shirt - by - you - the - iron ?

2. days - for - I - two - there - was.

3. sadly - the - He - yesterday - played - recorder.

4. on - Was - the - Maher - phone - talking ?

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. Are Ali and fady absent

2. Maher didn t visit aswan.

محافظة الأقصر / إدارة إسمنا التعليمية ١٩**A Listening****1 Listen and circle:** استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

- a. 49 El-Salam Street.
b. Ahmed Samy.
- a. She was there for a week.
b. She was there for a month.
- a. Do you iron the shirt by yourself ?
b. Do you fly the plane by yourself ?
- a. Where is he going on Monday ?
b. Where are you going on Friday ?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Amir : How was the film ?

Said : It was (1)

Amir : (2) is the hero ?

Said : (3) is Adel Imam.

Amir : When is it (4) in the evening ?

Said : It is open from 6 to 9.

B Reading**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. I'm ready for the concert.

a. playing b. getting c. having d. seeing

2. Can you the wild animal ?

a. see b. phone c. play d. peel

3. When did he to Hong Kong ?

a. go b. went c. gone d. goes



4. you want some help ?
 a. Do b. Does c. Are d. Have
5. My father always us presents when he comes back.
 a. gave b. plays c. gives d. played
6. She could a bubble when she was little.
 a. build b. cut c. give d. blow
7. I don't like basketball.
 a. play b. plays c. playing d. played
8. were you going yesterday evening, Amira ? - To the market.
 a. When b. What c. Where d. Whose

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

1. flute - train - drums - tuba (.....)
2. badly - quietly - good - loudly (.....)
3. say - homework - blow - peel (.....)
4. fat - thin - tall - shirt (.....)
5. January - Monday - March - April (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Many tourists visit Egypt every year. Why ? Because Egypt has one third of the world's monuments. There are a lot of beaches, hotels and parks. They visit the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. They also visit the Pyramids and the Sphinx in Giza. They also visit temples in Luxor. They like taking photographs of our great places.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many tourists Egypt every year.
 a. visit b. come c. take d. give
2. They can visit the temples in
 a. Cairo b. Giza c. Luxor d. Tanta

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do the tourists like to take ?

4. What do they visit in Giza ?

C Writing

6 Write an email of FOUR sentences :

Write an e-mail to your friend Adel to tell him about your visit to the Pyramids last week. His e-mail address is adel22@gmail.com. Your name is Hisham and your e-mail address is hisham33@yahoo.com

To :
 From :
 Subject :

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. phone - on - Was - talking - the - she ?

2. car - was - washing - the - He.

3. in - 1995 - there - How many - websites - were ?

4. TV - let me - watch - mum - My - won't.

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. is Ahmed s father watching the television ?

2. no he isn't watching the television.

A Listening**1 Listen and circle:** استمع إلى معلمك وضع دائرة.

- a. No, I played it badly.
b. Yes, I played it well.
- a. I was washing the car.
b. It was flying over the car.
- a. How do you go to school?
b. When do you go to school?
- a. Is your sister a teacher?
b. Is your sister a vet?

2 Listen and complete: استمع إلى معلمك واكمل.

Basma: Where were you, Rania?

Rania: I went to Luxor and Aswan.

Basma: When (1) you go to Luxor and Aswan?

Rania: I went in (2)

Basma: How (3) were you there?

Rania: I was there (4) ten days.

B Reading**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

- Put it over there the window.
a. an b. to c. by d. for
- I think it's a wild animal. I can see eyes.
a. his b. her c. their d. its
- Do you like a pilot?
a. be b. been c. being d. not be
- What were you doing when your brother by?
a. ran b. runs c. running d. was running

- The school had a pizza
a. concert b. party c. orchestra d. restaurant
- We wrote and performed a/an
a. party b. orchestra c. chorus d. play
- There are months in a year.
a. four b. seven c. twelve d. ten
- Some wild animals escaped from the
a. house b. zoo c. computer d. museum

4 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- How - Why - What - happy (.....)
- slowly - good - loudly - quickly (.....)
- washing - climbing - feed - talking (.....)
- black - white - red - box (.....)
- cat - trumpet - cello - violin (.....)

5 Read the passage and answer the questions:

Bob and Lilli are our giant pandas. When giant pandas are born, they weigh 80 to 140 grams. Adults usually weigh 80 to 125 kilos. Giant pandas eat bamboo. They walk and run on all four legs. They can climb trees and swim. Giant pandas live in the mountains of China.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Giant pandas eat
a. fish b. bamboo c. meat d. fruit
- Giant pandas live in the of China.
a. mountains b. trees c. park d. schools

B. Answer the following questions:

- What are Bob and Lilli?
.....
- How do pandas walk and run?
.....

C Writing**6 Write an email of FOUR sentences :**

Write an email to your friend Nada to tell her about what you could and couldn't do when you were young. Your name is salim and your email address is salim@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is nada@gmail.com

To :
 From :
 Subject :

.....

7 Rearrange the following words to make correct sentences:

1. ever - **Do** - you - a broad - fly ?

2. your - **Where** - parents - are ?

3. , Mona - up - **Don't** - give.

4. is - This - sister - **Hala** - my.

8 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. what is your friend's name

2. I m helping my sister soha.

Revision**8****Listening texts**

١. نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بكتاب الشرح

UNIT (6)*** Listen and complete : page 17**

Kareem : What are you doing,
 Mona ?

Mona : I am cleaning up the
 music room.

Kareem : Can I help you ?

Mona : Sure. Can you put the
 bass by the window ?

Kareem : Ugh! It is so heavy.

Mona : Look out, Kareem ! There
 is a box behind you.

1 Listen and complete : page 18

Toka : Do you need some help ?

Rokia : Sure. You can put these
 toys in the toy box.

Toka : Where is the toy box ?

Rokia : It's behind you, over there.

Toka : Thanks.

Rokia : You're welcome.

Test (1) on Unit (6)**1 Listen and circle : page 51**

1. How does he play the piano ?
 He plays the piano slowly.

2. Can I help you ?
 Sure. You can move the bass.

3. Can you take a message ?
 - Sure.

4. What are you doing ?
 - I'm helping Mr Khaled.

2 Listen and complete :

Mona : What are you doing,
 Kareem ?

Kareem : I am helping Mr
 Khaled clean up the
 music room.

Mona : Can I help you ?

Kareem : Sure. You can move
 the bass.

Mona : Where can I put it ?

Kareem : Over there, by the
 window.

Test (2) on Unit (6)**1 Listen and circle : page 54**

1. What did you play yesterday ?
 We played the drums.

2. How does he play the recorder ?
 He plays the recorder slowly.

3. Are you the soloist of the
 chorus ?
 Yes, I am.

4. How did she play the cello ?
 She played it well.

2 Listen and complete :

Doddy : When was the spring
 performance ?

Huda : It was last Friday.

Doddy : Who sang songs ?

Huda : Amira was the soloist.

Doddy : What did the orchestra
 perform ?

Huda : They performed music
 by Beethoven.